PATRICIA CRONE & MARTIN HINDS

God's Caliph

Religious authority in the first centuries of Islam
God's Caliph

Religious authority in
the first centuries of Islam

PATRICIA CRONE
University Lecturer in Islamic History and
Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford

and

MARTIN HINDS
University Lecturer in Arabic and
Fellow of Trinity Hall, Cambridge
CONTENTS

1 Introduction 1
2 The title khalīf at Allāh 4
3 The Umayyad conception of the caliphate 24
4 Caliphal law 43
5 From caliphal to Prophetic sunna 58
   The Umayyads 59
   The 'Abbāsids 80
6 Epilogue 97

Appendix 1 On the date and origin of the caliphate 111
Appendix 2 The letters of al-Walīd II and Yazīd III 116
Appendix 3 Abū Ḥamza’s comments on the caliphs 129
Appendix 4 al-Ma’mūn’s letter of designation of ‘Alī
   al-Riḍā as his successor 133

Works cited 140

Index 153
What was the nature of the early caliphate? Islamicists generally believe it to have been a purely political institution. According to Nallino, no caliph ever enjoyed religious authority;¹ according to other Islamicists, some caliphs did lay claim to such authority, but only by way of secondary development and only with limited success². In what follows we shall challenge this belief. It is of course true that religious authority was the prerogative of scholars rather than of caliphs in classical Islam, but we shall argue that this is not how things began. The early caliphate was conceived along lines very different from the classical institution, all religious and political authority being concentrated in it; it was the caliph who was charged with the definition of Islamic law, the very core of the religion, and without allegiance to a caliph no Muslim could achieve salvation. In short, we shall argue that the early caliphate was conceived along the lines familiar from Shi‘ite Islam.

The conventional Islamicist view of the caliphate is that enshrined in the bulk of our sources. Practically all the literature informs us that though the Prophet was God’s representative on earth in both political and religious matters, there ceased to be a single representative in religious matters on the Prophet’s death. Political power passed to the new head of state, the caliph; but religious authority remained with the Prophet himself or, differently put, it passed to

those men who remembered what he had said. These men, the Companions, transmitted their recollection of his words and deeds to the next generation, who passed it on to the next, and so forth, and whoever learnt what the Prophet had said and done acquired religious authority thereby. In short, while political power continued to be concentrated in one man, religious authority was now dispersed among those people who, owing their authority entirely to their learning, came to be known as simply the 'ulamā', the scholars. As it happened, however, the first three caliphs (Abū Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthmān) were themselves Companions, so that in practice religious and political authority continued to be united, if no longer concentrated, in the head of state, and during this period the caliphs could and did issue authoritative rulings on law. But though the fourth caliph ('Alī) was also a Companion and moreover a kinsman of the Prophet, he failed to be generally accepted, and on his death the caliphate passed to men who had converted late and unwillingly (the Umayyads), so that the happy union of religion and politics now came to an end. Caliphs and 'ulamā' went their separate ways, to be briefly reunited only under the pious 'Umar II.

Most Shi'ites disagree with this view. According to the Imāmīs and related sects, the legitimate head of state ('Alī) inherited not only the political, but also the religious authority of the Prophet. In practice, of course, the legitimate head of state after 'Alī was deprived of his political power by his Sunnī rivals, so that he could only function as a purely religious leader of his Shi'ite following; but in principle he was both head of state and ultimate authority on questions of law and doctrine in Islam.

Modern Islamicists however generally regard the Shi'ites as deviant. Some take them to have started off as adherents of a political leader who was not, at first, very different from that of their opponents, but who was gradually transformed into a religious figurehead. Others believe them to have elevated their leader into a religious figurehead from the start, but to have done so under the influence of foreign ideas, their model being the supposedly charismatic leadership of pre-Islamic south Arabia. Either way, it is the Shi'ites, not the Sunnīs, who are seen as having diverged from the common pattern.

It certainly makes sense to assume that Sunnīs and Shi'ites started

---


4 Thus W. M. Watt, Islam and the Integration of Society, London 1961, pp. 105f.; repeated by Watt in numerous other publications; accepted by Nagel, Rechtleitung, pp. 45f.
with a common conception of the caliphal office; and given that we owe practically all our sources to those who were in due course to become the Sunnī majority, it is not surprising that we automatically assume this conception to have been of the Sunnī rather than the Shī'ite type. There is, however, much evidence to suggest that this is a mistake.
The title khalīfah Allāh

We take as our starting point the well known fact that the Umayyads made use of the title khalīfah Allāh,1 an expression which we along with many others understand to mean ‘deputy of God’.

This translation is scarcely in need of much defence. A khalīfa is somebody who stands in the place of another, that is a deputy or a successor depending on whether the other is absent or dead; since the Muslims assumed God to be alive, khalīfah Allāh cannot mean ‘God’s successor’. However, in order to accommodate the conventional view that the caliphate is succession to Muḥammad rather than deputyship on behalf of God, Goldziher construed it as meaning ‘successor (of the prophet approved) by God’,2 and this interpretation has found favour with some. It might now be defended with reference to Paret’s conclusion that Qur’ānically khalīfa means successor.3 Two Qur’ānic verses were customarily invoked by those who called themselves khalīfah Allāh, that is 2:28, in which God announces that ‘I am placing a khalīfa on earth’ with reference to Adam, and 38:25,

The title Khalifat Allah

in which He tells David that 'we have made you a khalifā on earth'; if Paret is right that khalifā invariably means successor in the Qur'ān, and if the title khalifat Allah was actually coined with reference to these verses, then the title ought indeed to mean 'God's successor' in the sense of 'successor appointed by Him' as Goldziher suggested. But plainly it did not. Leaving aside the fact that there were exegetes who disagreed with Paret and that the provenance of the title is unknown, the texts leave no doubt that khalifat Allah as applied to the head of state was understood to mean 'deputy of God'. As Watt notes, there are passages in both poetry and prose which militate against Goldziher's interpretation; paraphrastic titles such as amin Allah, 'trustee of God', rā'i Allah, 'shepherd of God', sultan Allah, 'the authority of God' or nā'ib Allah, 'lieutenant of God' also make it unlikely that khalifat Allah meant anything but 'deputy of God'; and so does the general tenor of the sources, as will be seen. Moreover, since 'Uthmān, the first caliph for whom the title khalifat Allah is securely attested, was also known as amin Allah, there is no reason to assume that khalifat Allah only acquired its exalted meaning in the course of its evolution; we may take it that it meant 'deputy of God' from the start.

Now 'deputy of God' is a title which implies a strong claim to religious authority. This is why we are interested in it, and we wish to begin by establishing three basic points. First, it is attested not

4 If khalifā means successor here, Adam was a successor to angels or jinn and David to some previous king.

5 Cf. Watt, 'God's Caliph', p. 566, where some exegetical views are cited. Al-Bayḍāwī also accepts that khalifā means deputy, adding that every prophet was a deputy of God (Anwār al-tanzīl wa-asrār al-tāwil, Istanbul n.d., vol. 1, p. 64, ad 2:28), and the same interpretation is implied in the stories in which 'Umar I and 'Umar II reject the title of khalifat Allah on the ground that it refers exclusively to prophets such as David (cf. below, note 86). According to Watt, the exegetes exercised great ingenuity to avoid the interpretation of khalifā as 'deputy' for political reasons, opting for far-fetched interpretations such as that of 'posterity' or 'successor' instead (W. M. Watt, The Formative Period of Islamic Thought, Edinburgh 1973, p. 84; the far-fetched interpretation is that adopted by Paret). But what bothered an exegete such as al-Ṭabarī was clearly not politics, but rather the incompatibility of 2:28 with the doctrine of prophetic īsma: how could a deputy of God, viz. a prophet, be said to 'act corruptly and shed blood'? (cf. id., 'God's Caliph', p. 566).

6 Watt, 'God's Caliph', p. 571; id., Formative Period, p. 84. In what follows we shall translate khalifat Allah as 'deputy of God' or leave the expression untranslated; the reader may judge for himself how many times 'successor of the Prophet approved by God' would be a felicitous rendition.

7 Cf. the index.

8 Cf. Watt, Formative Period, p. 84, where this possibility is left open. For 'Uthmān as amin Allah see below, note 85.
just for some Umayyad caliphs, but for all of them, or more precisely for all of those who lived to rule for more than a year; secondly, it was an official designation of the Umayyad head of state, not just a term of flattery; and thirdly, it was well known to be what the title of khalīfa stood for when used on its own.

1 Attestations per caliph

Note: In order not to clutter the text we give only short references here; full bibliographical details are given in the list of works cited. We should like to acknowledge our debt to Tyan, whose Califat provided us with many of our attestations.

(1) 'Uthmān

(a) 'I am the servant of God and His deputy' (Aghānī, vol. xvi, p. 326; 'Iqd, vol. iv, p. 301*).
(b) 'I beseech you by God and remind you of His right and the right of His khalīfa' (Aghānī, vol. xvi, p. 325).
(c) 'Perhaps you will see the khalīfa of God among you as he was, one day in a place of joy' (Ḥassān b. Thābit, no. 20: 10; cf. 'Arafat, 'Background', pp. 276ff.).
(d) 'The deputy of God, he gave them and granted them what there was of gold, vessels and silver' (Laylā al-Akhyaliyya, no. 27: 2).
(e) 'They were brought something which cancels the duty to avenge a deputy of God's (khalīfat 'Allāh, Naṣr b. Muzāḥim, Waq'at Šīffīn, p. 229).

(2) Mu'āwiya

(a) 'The earth belongs to God and I am the deputy of God' (Bal., Ans., vol. iv/a, p. 17 = vol. iv/1, p. 20, §63; Mas., Murūj, vol. iii, §1861 = v, pp. 104f).
(b) 'Your brother, Ibn Ḥarb, is the deputy of God and you are his vizier' (Ḥāritha b. Badr to Ziyād b. Abīhi in Tab., ser. ii, p. 78).
(c) 'You have lost the khalīfat Allāh and been given the khilāfat Allāh' ('Aṭā' or 'Āṣim b. Abī Ṣayfī to Yazīd I on Mu'āwiya's death in Jāḥiz, Bayān, vol. ii, p. 191; Mas., Murūj, vol. iii, §1912 = v, p. 152; 'Iqd, vol. iii, p. 309*).
(d) 'Mu'āwiya b. Abī Sufyān was a servant whom God deputed
(istakhlafahu Allāh) over the servants...and God...has now invested us with what he had’ (Yazīd I in Ibn Qutayba, Imāma, p. 190).


(3) Yazīd I

(a) Cf. above, 2, c,d,e.
(b) Imām al-muslimīn wa-khīlaṣat rabb al-ālamīn (Muslim b. ‘Uqba in Ibn Qutayba, Imāma, p. 203, cf. p. 202: ‘I hope that God, exalted and mighty is He, will inspire His khīlaṣa and ‘abd with knowledge of what should be done’).
(c) ‘Woe to you who have separated from the sunna and jamā’a and who have disobeyed the deputy of God’ (Syrians to Hāshimites in Ḥamza al-Iṣfahānī, p. 217).

(5) The Sufyānids in general

(b) The Umayyads in the presence of Mu‘āwiyah are addressed as bānī khīlaṣa’ Allāh (Aghānī, vol. xx, p. 212; al-Tilbānī, ‘Miskīn al-Dārimī’, p. 185).

(5) Marwān I

No direct attestation.

(6) ‘Abd al-Malik

(a) For the coinage of ‘Abd al-Malik’s reign which refers to khīlaṣat Allāh, see Walker, Catalogue, vol. ii, pp. 28, 30f (bronze coins, undated (but see below, chapter 3, note 1)); vol. i, p. 24; Miles, ‘Miḥrāb and ‘Anazah’, p. 171; and id., ‘Some Arab-Sasanian and Related Coins’, p. 192 (miḥrāb and ‘anazā dirhams, undated); Walker, Catalogue, vol. i, p. 25 and Salmān, ‘Dirham nādir’, pp. 163ff. (Khusraw II plus standing caliph dirham, dated 75).
(b) For the stories in which al-Hajjāj deems God’s kharīfa superior to His rasūl with reference to ‘Abd al-Malik, see below, chapter 3, pp. 28f.
(c) ‘To the servant of God, the Commander of the Faithful and kharīfat rabb al-‘ālāmin’ (letter from al-Hajjāj to ‘Abd al-Malik in ‘IQD, vol. v, p. 2512).
(d) ‘God, exalted is He, has said, “fear God as much as you can” (64:16). This is [due] to God . . . Then He said, “hear and obey” (also 64:16). This [obedience is due] to the servant of God, the kharīfa of God and the noble one/beloved (najīb/ḥabīb) of God, ‘Abd al-Malik’ (speech by al-Hajjāj in Mas., Mūrūj, vol. iii, §2088 = v, p. 330; ‘IQD, vol. iv, p. 117; cf. Abū Dāwūd, Sunan, vol. ii, p. 514, and the mangled version in Ibn ‘Asākir, Tahdhib, vol. iv, p. 72, in which the caliphal epithets are reduced to amīr al-mu‘minīn).
(f) ‘God, mighty and exalted is He, has deputed the Commander of the Faithful ‘Abd al-Malik over His lands (istakhlaṣaḥu Allāh) and been satisfied with him as imam over His servants’ (speech by al-Hajjāj in Ibn Qutayba, Imāma, p. 233).
(g) ‘The earth belongs to God who has appointed His kharīfa to it’ (Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 256).
(h) ‘Ibn Marwān is on your hump, the kharīfa of God who has mounted you’ (camel-driver’s song in Aghānī, vol. xvi, p. 183; a variant version refers to al-Walīd I, cf. below).
(i) ‘God has garnished you with kharīfa and hudā’ (Jarīr, p. 474).”
(l) ‘The deputy of God on his minbar’ (Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyi, no. 1:17 (p. 70)).
(m) Ḥalīfāt al-Raḥmān (Rā‘ī, pp. 228, 229, variants; the text has wāli amr Allāh).

(7) al-Walīd I

(a) For the stories in which Khālid al-Qasrī deems God’s kharīfa superior to His rasūl with reference to al-Walīd I, see below, chapter 3, p. 29.
(b) *Fa-anta li-rabb al-‘ālamîn khalîfa* (Jarîr, p. 384*).
(c) ‘You are the shepherd of God on earth’ (Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 312*).
(d) ‘The caliph of God through whom clouds of rain are sought’ (Nâbighat B. Shaybân, p. 28*).
(e) ‘The *khalîfa* of God through whose *sunna* rain is sought’ (Akhtâl, p. 185*).
(f) ‘The *khalîfa* of God who has mounted you’ (Al-Walîd to his camel in *Iqd*, vol. iv, p. 424, a variant of 6 (h); cf. Ibn ‘Asâkir, *Tahdhib*, vol. iii, p. 398, where it is Jamîl who says it of al-Walîd I).

(8) Sulaymân

(a) ‘The *khalîfa* of God through whom rain is sought’ (Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 361*). Note also Jarîr, p. 35*, where Ayyûb, the son of Sulaymân is prematurely described as *khalîfa li’l-Rahmân*.
(b) ‘My heir apparent among you and my successor among all of those over whom God has deputed me (istakhlafanî Allâh) is . . . ‘Umar’ (Sulaymân’s testament in Ibn Qutayba, *Imáma*, p. 308; in this document Sulaymân styles himself *khalîfat al-muslimîn*, cf. p. 307).

(9) ‘Umar II

(a) ‘The *khalîfa* of God, and God will preserve him’ (Jarîr, p. 274*; the title is mentioned again at p. 275*).
(b) ‘The one who sent the Prophet has placed the *khilafa* in the just imam’ (Jarîr, p. 415*).

(10) Yazîd II

(a) ‘Yazîd b. ‘Abd al-Malik is the deputy of God; God had deputed him over His servants . . . and he was appointed me to what you see’ (Ibn Hubayra in *Mas.*, *Murûj*, vol. iv, §2210 = v, p. 458; Ibn Khallikân, vol. ii, p. 71).
(b) *Khalîfat Allâh* (Jarîr, p. 256*).

(11) Hishâm

(a) For stories in which the deputy and the messenger of God are compared with reference to Hishâm, see below, chapter 3, p. 29.
(b) ‘and Hishām, the deputy of God’ (al-‘Abalī in Aghānī, vol. xi, p. 305).

(c) ‘You are using abusive words for all that you are God’s deputy on earth’ (visitor to Hishām in Ibn Kathīr, Bidāya, vol. ix, p. 351).

(d) ‘You have lied to khalīfat al-Raḥmān concerning it’ (al-Farazdaq or al-Mufarrigh b. al-Muraqqā’in Aghānī, vol. xxii, p. 21).


(f) Note also khalīfat ahl al-arḍ, khalīfat al-anām (Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 1657, vol. ii, p. 83014); compare Sulaymān’s khalīfat al-muslimīn (above, 8,b).

(12) al-Walīd II

(a) Cf. the letter translated below, appendix 2, pp. 116ff., in which the caliphal institution is identified as deputyship on behalf of God and the caliphs are referred to as khulāfā’ Allāh.

(13) Yazīd III

(a) Cf. the letter translated below, appendix 2, pp. 126ff., in which Yazīd III identifies all Umayyad caliphs up to and including Hishām as khulāfā’ Allāh; by implication he brackets himself with them.

(14) Marwān II

(a) Cf. the letter in which Marwān (not yet caliph) states that ‘this caliphate is from God’ (Tab., ser. ii, p. 1850).


(c) ‘And in disobedience to the deputy of God a Muslim continually strikes with the sword in his hand that of his brother’ (‘Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Yaḥyā with reference, probably, to Marwān II, in his ‘Risāla fi‘l-fitna’ in al-Tadkhīra al-ḥamdūniyya, bāb 31). Cf. below, chapter 3, note 14, where ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd speaks of God’s rasūl and khilīfa.
The title Khalifat Allāh

(d) Cf. also the reflection of khalifat Allāh in Tab., ser. iii, p. 32, whence Dāwūd b. 'Alī denounces Marwān as khalifat al-shayṭān. (Ya'qūbī, vol. ii, p. 420, has ḥalīf al-shayṭān, obviously a corruption.)

(15) The Marwānid in general

(a) Thābit Quṭna refers to ṭā'at al-Raḥmān aw khulafaʾihi (Aghānī, vol. xiv, p. 271). Cf. also above, 12 and 13.

(16) The Umayyads in general

(a) According to al-Madāʾinī, the Syrians called all their children Muʾāwiya, Yazīd and al-Walīd ‘after the caliphs of God’ (Pellat, ‘Culte de Muʾāwiya’, p. 54).

2 The official nature of the title

That khalifat Allāh was an official title of the Umayyad head of state is clear from the attestations given already. It was not of course the title commonly used for purposes of address and reference to individual Umayyad caliphs. For such purposes amīr al-muʾminīn, ‘commander of the faithful’, was adopted, and this title is far more densely attested in the sources than khalīfa; indeed, in the non-Muslim sources khalīfa scarcely figures at all. But khalīfa was nonetheless the official designation of the caliph’s function, and what the attestations just given show is that it stood for khalifat Allāh, not khalifat rasūl Allāh, ‘successor of the messenger of God’. Thus it is khalifat Allāh which appears on ‘Abd al-Malik’s coins; and though it did not stay on the coinage for long, the Umayyads continued

9 According to Brock, it is only attested once in Syriac literature, and that in a late source: ‘Uthmān is addressed as ‘caliph of the prophet of God’ in the Chronicle ad 1234 (S. P. Brock, ‘Syriac Views of Emergent Islam’ in G. H. A. Juynboll (ed.), Studies on the First Century of Islamic society, Carbondale and Edwardsville 1982, p. 14 and note 33 thereto). The only Syriac attestation thus renders the classical khalifat rasūl Allāh.

10 Similarly, the official designation of the function of a French parish priest is curé, but his parishioners will usually address him as père and refer to him as le père. In his letter regarding the succession al-Walīd II refers to the caliphs as khulāfāʾ when he describes their history, function and importance, but switches to amīr al-muʾminīn when he addresses his subjects directly (cf. below, appendix 2).

11 The fact that it disappeared from the coinage does not mean that ‘Abd al-Malik repented of having called himself khalifat Allāh, but that he changed his mind regarding the kind of propaganda he wished the coinage to make.
to spell out *khalīfa* as *khalīfat Allāh* in their public statements until the very end of the period: for all their political differences, al-Walīd II, Yazid III and Marwān II were at one on this point. The appearance of *khalīfat Allāh* and variations on this title in court poetry thus reflects official usage, not poetic inventiveness. Leaving aside a reference to 'Uthmān in a thirteenth-century Syriac source, *khalīfat rasūl Allāh* is not attested for the Umayyads at all. 12

3 *Khalīfa = khalīfat Allāh*

It was not just the Umayyads and their poets who took *khalīfa* to stand for *khalīfat Allāh* when applied to the head of state; apparently everybody did so. Thus Yazid b. al-Muhallab, in a letter to the caliph Sulaymān, refers to 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb wa-'Uthmān b. ‘Affān wa-man ba'dahumā min khulafā' Allāh, ‘‘Umar, ‘Uthmān and the deputies of God after them’, in a completely matter-of-fact way implying that all caliphs were *ipso facto* deputies of God. 13 This agrees with the fact that even an anti-caliph such as Ibn al-Zubayr was referred to in poetry as *khalīfat al-Raḥmān*. 14 On the Khārijite side we have the ferocious speech delivered by Abī Ḥamza in the 740s in which the iniquitous behaviour of Yazid II (and other Umayyad caliphs) is described with the sarcastic comment, ‘is such supposed to be the distinguishing characteristic of *khulafā’ Allāh’? 15 It is not clear whether Abū Ḥamza held even righteous rulers to be deputies of God, but one would certainly infer from this that, like others, he held the title of *khalīfa* to stand for *khalīfat Allāh*. 16 On the Shiʿite side

12 Cf. above, note 9.
13 Tab., ser. iii, p. 1334.
15 Cf. below, appendix 3, section 9.
16 ‘Deputy of God’ is not an appropriate title for a Khārijite ruler, and at some stage the Khārijites dully rejected the caliphal title altogether (cf. E. A. Salem, *Political Theory and Institutions of the Khawārij*, Baltimore 1956, pp. 52f.). But apparently they retained it throughout the Umayyad period. Thus we are told that Qaṭārī b. al-Fuji‘a had been acknowledged as caliph (al-Dhahabī, *Siyār al-lām al-nubalā‘*, ed. Sh. al-Arnā‘ī and others, Beirut 1981–, vol. iv, p. 152; that he had been known as amīr al-mu‘minīn is numismatically attested, cf. Walker, *Catalogue*, vol. ii, pp. 112f., and well known to the literary tradition). And of Abī Ḥamza himself we are told that he gave allegiance to ‘Abdallāh b. Yahyā ‘alā ‘l-khilāfā (Tab., ser. ii, p. 1943; *Aghānī*, vol. xxiii, p. 227). There is nothing to suggest that he or any other Khārijites took the title to stand for something other than *khalīfat Allāh* among themselves: ‘do you not see how the deputyship of God and the imamate of the Muslims have been destroyed?’; as Abū Ḥamza exclaims in Ibn Abī ‘l-Ḥadīd’s version of his speech (below, appendix 3, note 8).
the title is well attested too, as will be seen.\textsuperscript{17} Finally, there is a story to the effect that 'Umar II objected to being addressed as \textit{khalifat Allāh fi 'l-ard.}\textsuperscript{18} This story is unlikely to be true,\textsuperscript{19} and it may not even date from the Umayyad period. But however this may be, the point which matters here is that 'Umar II singles out his name, \textit{kunya} and the title \textit{amir al-mu'minin} as alternative forms of address, not \textit{khalifat rasūl Allāh}; to the author of this story \textit{khalifat} apparently also equalled \textit{khalifat Allāh} so that 'Umar had to reject the caliphal title altogether.

Having established our three points for the Umayyads, we should now like to point out that they hold true for the 'Abbasids too. The title \textit{khalifat Allāh} is attested for Abū 'l-'Abbās,\textsuperscript{20} al-Manār,\textsuperscript{21} al-Mahdī,\textsuperscript{22} al-Hādī,\textsuperscript{23} Hārūn al-Rashīd,\textsuperscript{24} al-Amīn,\textsuperscript{25} al-Ma'mūn,\textsuperscript{26}

\textsuperscript{17} Cf. below, note 57.
\textsuperscript{19} Cf. below, p. 74. Note also that 'Umar II here protests when an anonymous person addresses him as \textit{khalifat Allāh}, whereas nobody claims that he did so when Jarir addressed him as such (cf. above, p. 9). On the contrary, Pseudo-Ibn Qutayba informs us that Jarir's poem moved him to tears, though it still failed to make him squander money on the poet (\textit{Imāma}, pp. 310ff.; similarly \textit{Iqd}, vol. ii, pp. 94ff., though without the tears).
\textsuperscript{20} His \textit{tawqīf} on a letter in which Abū Muslim requests permission to perform the \textit{hajj} says that he will not prevent him from visiting \textit{bayt Allāh al-ḥarām} av \textit{khalifatatihi} (\textit{Iqd}, vol. iv, p. 21110).
\textsuperscript{23} Tab., ser. iii, p. 600, ult. (\textit{Allāh . . . khalifatuhu}); \textit{Aghānī}, vol. xix, p. 285 (\textit{khištāf Allāh}).
\textsuperscript{24} Abū 'l-'Atāhiya in Tab., ser. iii, p. 687. \textit{Id.} in \textit{Aghānī}, vols. iv, p. 14; xix, p. 74; It Kathīr, \textit{Bidāya}, vol. x, pp. 217 (\textit{warithna rasūl Allāh wa-baqiyat fīnā khalifat Allāh}), 221; \textit{Iqd}, vol. iii, p. 293\textsuperscript{14}. For Hārūn as \textit{khalifat Allāh} see also Goldziher,
al-Mu'tašim,27 al-Wāthic,28 al-Mutawakkil,29 and al-Muntašir,30 that is for every caliph from 750 to 862, and thereafter for al-Mu'tazz in 865,31 for al-Muhtadi (d. 870),32 for al-Mu'tamid (d. 892),33 for al-Mu'tādid (d. 902), who described all the 'Abbāsids as khulafā' Allāh34, for al-Ṭā'i,35 and other caliphs of the Buyid period,36 for


25 Aghāni, vol. xx, p. 59. According to Qalqashandi, Subh, vol. i, p. 415, al-Amīn was the first caliph to be referred to as such [rather than as amīr al-mu'minin] in the Friday prayer, the formula used being allahumma aslih 'abdaka wakhilafataka; al-Amīn was thus khaliifat Allāh even in mosques.

26 For khaliifat Allāh on al-Ma'mūn's coins, see G. C. Miles, The Numismatic History of Rayy, New York 1938, pp. 103f., 106f.; S. Shamma, 'Dirhamān nādirān 'an 'alāqāṭ diniiyya', al-Maskūkat 4 (1973), p. 46; al-Ma'mūn is also khaliifat Allāh on dirhams (now in the British Museum) struck in the name of Ṭalḥa [b. Tāhir] in Samarqand in 208, 209 and 210, in Nishapur in 208 and 209, and in Herat, Zaranj and al-Muhammadiyya in 208 (we are obliged to Nicholas Lowick for this information). He referred to himself as khaliifat Allāh in a letter to Tāhir (Tqd, vol. iv, pp. 21f.); and Tāhir confirmed that this was indeed what he was (Aghāni, vol. xx, p. 54). Al-Ḥusayn b. al-Ḍāḥīk described him as khaliifat al-Raḥmān (Aghāni, vol. vii, p. 301); and he himself spoke of khulafā' Allāh and khilafatuhu fi ardihi in his letter announcing the designation of al-Riḍā as his successor (see appendix 4).


28 al-Khaṭṭīb al-Baghdādi, Ta'rikh Baghdād, Cairo 1931, vol. xiv, p. 17 (the one who sent the Prophet Muhammad gave the khilāfa to al-imām al-muhtadi); Aghāni, vol. ix, p. 284 (Allāh . . . khaliifatihi); cf. also vol. vii, p. 19511 where he is khāzīn Allāh fi khulahiyyi.


30 Tab., ser. iii, p. 1475 (abd Allāh wa-khaliifatuhu).

31 Tab., ser. iii, p. 1546 (abd Allāh wa-khaliifatuhu: there is a close resemblance between the language of this bay'a and that of the bay'a to al-Muntašir). Note also the reference in a document of the same year, in connection with al-Musta'in, to the fact that God had made khilafatuhu li-dinihi 'ismatun wa-ta'at khalafāhī hadīn wājibun 'alā kā'fatt al-umma, ibid., p. 1565).

32 Ibn Taghibirdi, al-Nuḫum al-zāhira, Cairo 1929–72, vol. ii, p. 268, where the caliph is told by a Hāshimite 'anta khaliifat rabb al-ʻulamin wa'bn am'm sayyid al-mursalin.'

33 Fākhī, Makka, MS, fol. 352b (= Al Dahas, p. 272: amara khaliifat Allāh Ahmad al-imām al-Mu'tamid 'alā 'llāh amīr al-mu'minin . . . (inscription at al-Masjid al-Ḥarām)).

34 Tab., ser. iii, p. 2177.

35 Al-Ṭā'i is described as al-imām ḥujjat Allāh 'alā khaliqiyyi wa-khaliifatuhu fi ardihi in an official letter written by al-Ṣābi on his behalf (Qalqashandi, Subh, vol. vi, p. 413). 'Aḍūd al-dawla, who was more wont to bully than to flatter this caliph, described him as khaliifat Allāh fi ardihi to a Fāṭimid embassy (al-Nahrawālī,
The title *Khalifat Allah* in the late eleventh century, al-Mustazhir in the late eleventh/early twelfth, al-Muqtafi in the mid-twelfth, al-Nāsir in the late twelfth/early thirteenth, and al-Mustanṣir in the thirteenth. The title is also attested for the 'Abbāsids in general. As in the Umayyad period it counted as the official designation of the head of state. Thus it was used in official letters and on official occasions; and al-Ma'mūn, followed by al-Muqtadī, restored it to the coinage. A manual of court etiquette attributed to al-Jiibi states that 'kings' al-'alam bi-a'alam bayt Allah al-haram, ed. F. Wustenfeld, Leipzig 1857, p. 168). The opinion of H. Busse, *The Revival of Persian Kingship under the Buyyids*, in D. S. Richards (ed.), *Islamic Civilisation 950–1150*, Oxford 1973, p. 63, that 'Aqūd al-dawla's concept of this title was contrary to 'what the caliph and Muslim theory of state held... [but] typical for the emir's opinion of the relationship between caliphate and kingship', is clearly not correct.)

36 See the model letters in al-Ṣāhib b. 'Abbād, *Rasa'īl*, ed. A.-W. 'Azzām and Sh. Ḍayf, Cairo 1947, pp. 21 (*khalifat Allah*), 23 (*khulafa' Allah fi arḍihi*). Cf. also al-Mu'ayyad al-Shirāzī, *Sirat al-Mu'ayyad*, ed. M. K. Ḥusayn, Cairo 1949, pp. 76, 154: among the various titles which the caliph had bestowed on the Buyyid Abū Kalijār was yāmin *khalifat Allah*, which reappears as qasīm *khalifat Allah* in a letter from al-Mu'ayyad, the Fāṭimid dā'ī: al-Mu'ayyad denied that the 'Abbāsid was *khalifat Allah* (it was the Fāṭimid ruler who was deputy of God in his view, cf. below, note 62).


39 Qalqashandī, *Ṣubḥ*, vol. vi, p. 397, where a letter from that caliph to the Seljuq sultan includes *mu'in khalifat Allah* among the latter's titles.

40 al-Bāshā, *Alqāb*, p. 278 (*khalifat Allah fi arḍihi wa-nā'īibu hu fi khalqihi*).

41 Cf. Tyan, *Califat*, p. 447n. (where the 'Abbāsids are *khāla'if Allah*); compare also 'Iqd, vol. iv, pp. 24018, 2429. Watt's impression that the title became less frequently used under the 'Abbāsids is both right and wrong ('God's Caliph', p. 571; *Formative Period*, p. 84). It is not true that the caliphs made any less use of it, but the nature of court poetry changed. The themes rehearsed by Jarīr and al-Farazdaq were swept away by new poetry, so that 'Abbāsid *diwāns* yield few references even though the official concept of the caliphate remained the same.

42 Cf. above, notes 19f., 31f., 35, 39; below, note 54; E. Tyan, *Institutions du droit public musulman*, vol. ii (Sultanat et califat, hereafter Sultanat), Paris 1956, p. 116. According to a model cited by Qalqashandī, *Ṣubḥ*, vol. viii, p. 325, letters sent to governors and others on the accession of a new caliph should state that God has selected so-and-so *li-khilafatihi*; the model lettr of congratulation to a caliph on his accession similarly refers to *khilafat Allah* and *khalifat an min khulafa'īhi* (*ibid.*, vol. viii, pp. 393f.; compare pp. 398f.).

should be addressed as *khalifat Allāh, amīn Allāh* and *amīr al-mu'minīn*. And now as then *khalifat Allāh* was what the caliphal title was generally taken to mean. ‘We do not rebel against deputies of God’, Abū Dāwūd told Abū Muslim. ‘Muḍar produced the messenger of God, the book of God, the family of God and the deputy of God’, a member of the ‘Abbasid family announced with the intention of provoking tribal strife among the ‘Abbāsid troops.

*Khalifat Allāh* is also the title of the Mahdi in eschatological works. But there is one difference; whereas *khalifat rasūl Allāh* seems to have been unknown to the Umayyads, it makes an appearance under the ‘Abbāsids. Thus ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī described the caliphate as being *li-rasūl Allāh*; Bashshār b. Burd speaks of *khilāfah Ahmād* in poetry addressed to al-Mahdi. ‘Abd al-Malik b. Ṣalīh told Hārūn that he was *khalifat Allāh wa-rasūlihi... fī ummatihi wa-amūnuh fī alā ra'iyyatihi*; and even al-Ma'mūn spoke of *khilāfah rasūlihi*, while al-Mutawakkil was flattered as *khalifat rasūlihi* fī ‘ibādihi wa-khilāfah rasūl Allāh fī ummatihi. Indeed, by the time of Saladin it had become good form to refer to ‘God, His messenger, and their *khalīfa*’. Clearly, the ‘Abbāsids in no way resented this version of their title, which went hand in glove with their claim to have inherited the caliphate from their kinsman, the Prophet: thus al-Ma'mūn’s letter characteristically spoke of *khilāfah rasūlihi wa-l-qarāba bihi*. The point to note here, however, is that though the caliphs were happy to become successors of the Prophets, they did not thereby stop regarding themselves as deputies of God.

46 Cf. the second reference given above, note 20.
47 Tab., ser. iii, p. 366.
50 Bashshār, vol. iii, p. 74.
52 Ẓālīf al-Safwat, *Rasā’il*, vol. iii, p. 509.
53 Cf. the *Aghāfī* reference given above, note 29.
55 Ẓālīf al-Safwat, *Rasā’il*, vol. iii, p. 509; naturally Bashshār’s poetry referred to *mīrāth al-nabī* too (vol. iii, p. 284).
It was not only the 'Abbāsids who assumed the caliphs to have retained this function. When the Umayyads of Spain adopted the caliphal title, poets promptly spelt it out as khalīfāt Allāh. The Imāmis explained that their imams were khulāfā' Allāh fi ardihi, though as might be expected they too stress their right to khilāfāt rasūl Allāh. Imāmis likewise identified the imam as deputy of God and successor of the Prophet alike. An Ismā‘īlī convert of the Musafirid house numismatically proclaimed 'Alī to have been khalīfāt Allāh. The founder of the Fāṭimid dynasty was officially proclaimed khalīfāt Allāh 'alī 'l-‘alāmīn in the abortive attempt to establish a Fāṭimid state in Syria, and later Fāṭimid caliphs were also described as deputies of God in both poetry and prose. Only

56 'Iqd, vol. iv, p. 502\(^a\) (cited by Tyan, Califat, p. 445n.); cf. EI\(^b\), s.v. 'khalīfa‘', col. 943b, without references. 'Abd al-Rahmān III was also khalīfāt al-Rahmān, cf. 'Iqd, vol. iv, p. 521\(^c\); cf. also p. 494, where Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān is amīn Allāh.


58 See for example Kulaynī, Kāfī, p. 200; Mufid, Irshād, p. 401 and passim; al-Sharīf al-Murtadā, Dīwān, ed. R. al-Ṣaffār, Cairo 1958, vol. i, p. 50\(^d\), cf. p. 49\(^e\)–18. The caliphate is of course also envisaged as succession to Muḥammad when 'Alī is described as his waṣī‘, as standing in the same relation to him as Joshua unto Moses, and so on.

59 Ahmad b. Ya‘qūb, al-Risāla fi ‘l-imāma, ed. and tr. S. N. Makarem under the title The Political Doctrine of the Ismā‘īlīs, Delmar N.Y. 1977, fol. 86v, where the imam is khalīfāt Allāh ta‘āla fi khalīfatihī wa-li-rasūlihi fi ummatihī; Qur. 2:28 and 38:25 on God’s appointment of Adam and David are both cited. But al-Qāḍī al-Nu‘mān avoids both the caliphal title and these verses in his discussion of the imamate (Da‘ī‘im al-islām, ed. 'A. A. Faydī, Cairo 1951–60, vol. 1, nos. 36ff.).


the Zaydis seem never to have made use of the title khalīfatu Allāh.\textsuperscript{63} Among the Khārijites, ‘Abd al-Salām b. Hāshim al-Yashkurī continued Ābu Ḥāmza’s tradition by enumerating the misdeeds of al-Mahdī with a sarcastic comment on such behaviour ‘from somebody who lays claim to khilāfat Allāh’.\textsuperscript{64}

Such taunts notwithstanding, the ‘Abbāsids stuck to their elevated title even after their transfer to Mamluk Egypt, where they were duly referred to as khalīfatu Allāh and nā‘ib Allāh;\textsuperscript{65} when the Ottomans claimed to have inherited the role, they too became deputies of God.\textsuperscript{66}

Meanwhile the title had been adopted by the sultans in the Seljuq east\textsuperscript{67} no less than in Seljuq Rûm;\textsuperscript{68} a scholar such as al-Ṭahṭāwī still identified the king (sc. the khedive) as khalīfatu Allāh fi ardihi in nineteenth-century Egypt.\textsuperscript{69} The expression also made its appearance further afield. By the eighteenth century it had come to be used as

1949, no. 19: 3; cf. also no. 2: 137: \textit{ka-ta‘at Allāh ‘alā khalīfatihi wa’l-mustafa‘alā jami’ ummatihi}. Hānī’s poetry also refers to His deputies on earth (Tyan, \textit{Sultanat}, p. 514n.).

63 Not even Professor W. Madelung knows a Zaydi attestation (letter of 7/9 1984). In so far as he was a khalīfa, the Zaydi imam of the Yemen was apparently khalīfa (be it in the sense of deputy or successor) of the imams who had preceded him (\textit{khalīfatu al-‘imma}, cf. Qalqashandi, \textit{Šubh}, vol. vi, pp. 47, 123; vol. vii, p. 334). The Zaydis were however familiar with the idea that anyone who enjoined good and prohibited evil was khalīfa of God, His book and His messenger alike (cf. the reference given below, chapter 6, note 12).


68 Al-Bāshā, \textit{Alqāb}, p. 278.

69 Rif‘a Bey Rā‘fī [al-Ṭahṭāwī], \textit{Kitāb manāḥīj al-albāb al-miṣrīyya fī matsāḥāḥīj al-‘ādāb al-aṣrīyya}, Cairo 1912, p. 354 (we owe this reference to Y. M Choueiri).
The title Khalīfah Allāh

a royal title in Java,70 while African rulers had adopted titles such as khalīfah Allāh ta'ālah fi ardihi and khalīfah rabb al-ālamīn.71 Indian and Moroccan princes also liked to style themselves khalīfah Allāh and/or nā'īb Allāh.72 The idea that khalīfah stood for khalīfah rasūl Allāh was clearly not unknown: African rulers conflated it with the more exalted title to make khalīfah rasūl rabb al-ālamīn.73 But it cannot be said to have made much headway. Apparently it still has not. In May 1984 the then President Numayri was reported to be planning to turn Sudan into an Islamic republic with himself as ‘Allah’s representative on earth’ [= khalīfah Allāh fi ‘l-ard].74

In short, from ‘Uthmān to Numayrī, or in other words from about 644 to about 1984, Muslims of the most diverse political, religious, geographical and ethnic backgrounds have taken the title of khalīfah to stand for khalīfah Allāh, ‘deputy of God’. It thus seems natural to infer that this is what the title always meant. At least, it seems a little strained to propose that its meaning changed during the twelve years from 632 to 644 and remained stable for thirteen centuries thereafter. But if khalīfah meant ‘deputy of God’ from the start, then the Shi‘ites can hardly be altogether wrong in their claim that the legitimate head of state (whoever this individual was to the various parties at the time) inherited both the religious and the political power of the Prophet. Certainly, the Sunnī caliph was to lose his religious authority to scholars, just as he was to lose his political power to sultans. But this cannot be how things began.

This inference is so obvious that the reader may well wonder why it is hardly ever made in the secondary literature.75 It is not made because the Sunnī ‘ulamā‘ claim that the caliphal title did change its meaning in the twelve years between 632 and 644: originally it stood for khalīfah rasūl Allāh, ‘successor of the messenger of God’, they say, not for khalīfah Allāh. Khalīfah rasūl Allāh is the title which Abū Bakr, the first caliph, is said to have adopted, and the sources are sprinkled with incidental reminders that this is what he styled

72 Goldziher, Muslim Studies, vol. ii, p. 62n; cf also Arnold, Califate, pp 116f.
73 O’Fahey and Abu Salim, Land in Där Für, p. 30.
75 It is made in P. Crone and M. Cook, Hagarism, Cambridge 1977, pp. 28, 178; but even Tyan avoided it for all that he came close to doing the same.
himself. 76 Indeed, when people (somehow anticipating the claims of the Umayyads) addressed him as khalifat Allāh, he explicitly rejected this version of the title, stating that he was merely the Prophet’s successor and perfectly satisfied with that. 77 A similar story is told about ‘Umar, 78 while another story informs us that ‘Umar got tired of being known as khalifat khalifat rasūl Allāh, ‘successor of the successor of the messenger of God,’ and told people to call him ‘Commander of the Faithful’ instead; 79 thereafter, one infers, the title was stabilised as khalifat rasūl Allāh.

Practically all modern scholars accept the claim of the ‘ulamā, identifying the caliphal title as khalifat rasūl Allāh with little or no hesitation. 80 Evidently, this places the titulature of the later caliphs in an altogether different light. The Umayyads, we are left to infer, changed the title (just as they moved the capital, introduced dynastic rule, and so forth). 81 The caliphs did not really inherit religious


77 This report is cited in al-Balādhuri, Ansāb al-ashraf, vol. i, ed.M. Ḥamīdallāh, Cairo 1959, p. 529; Ibn Sa‘d, Ṭabaqātī, vol. iii, p. 183; Ibn Ḥanbal, Musnad, vol. i, p. 10; and elsewhere, all from Nāfi‘ b. ‘Umar from Ibn Abī Mulākā, a Meccan traditionist who died in 735, a century after Abū Bakr himself.

78 Tab., ser. i, pp. 2748f., from Jābir al-Ju‘fī, a Kufan traditionist who died about 748.

79 Tab., ser. i, p. 2748; Bal., Ans., vol. i, p. 528. The two stories have been amalgamated in the version cited by Margoliouth from the Rasī‘il of Badr al-Zamān (‘The Sense of the Title Khalifā’, pp. 323f.).

80 Thus even Watt and Paret. Both reject as apocryphal the story that Abū Bakr objected to the title khalifat Allāh, but neither considers the possibility that the whole point of crediting him with the designation khalifat rasūl Allāh was to downgrade the rival title (Watt, ‘God’s Caliph’, p. 568; Paret, ‘Ḥalifat Allāh’, p. 228). (Watt’s suggestion, Formative Period, p. 69, that Ibn Abī Mulākā put the apocryphal story into circulation in order to counter Umayyad claims to divine sanction of their rule on behalf of the Zubayrids, of whom he was a supporter, is implausible in view of the fact that Ibn al-Zubayr was himself known as khalifat al-Rahmān, cf. above, note 14.)

81 Indeed, they changed the title in order to introduce dynastic rule according to Rotter (Bürgerkrieg, pp. 35f., 248). Rotter rejects the authenticity of the line attributed to Ḥassān b. Thābit in which ‘Uthmān is referred to as khalifat Allāh and dates it to the second civil war (with reference to ‘Arafat, ‘Background’, pp. 276f.), arguing that the title was adopted by Mu‘awiyah towards the end of his reign, probably to justify his choice of successor. But though we have no wish to defend the authenticity of any of Ḥassān’s poetry, ‘Uthmān appears as khalifat Allāh in several other passages, as has been seen, while Mu‘awiyah appears as such in a poem uttered in praise of Ziyād b. Abīhī on the latter’s appointment to Basra in 45/665, four years after Mu‘awiyah’s accession. Naturally the date of these
authority: it was merely the Umayyads who claimed as much. Indeed, it could be argued that 'when the Umayyads used this pretentious title, it was merely intended to convey the unlimited power of the ruler'.\(^82\) and though contemporary scholars rarely go so far, the credibility of the claim implied in the title is undermined: apparent evidence for a specific concept of authority in Islam turns into evidence for little but Umayyad worldliness, or the growth of caliphal power in general.\(^83\)

It is however reasonable to reject the claim of the 'ulama'. Khalifat Allah is a title which, if taken seriously, leaves no room for 'ulama': if God manifests His will through caliphs here and now, there is no need to seek guidance from scholars who remember what a prophet had said in the past. The Umayyads took the title very seriously. They saw themselves as representatives of God on earth in the most literal sense of the word, as is clear above all from a long letter by al-Walid II.\(^84\) God has made the earth over to them: amīn Allāh, 'trustee of God', is another title regularly attested from the time of 'Uthmiin onwards.\(^85\) One is thus not surprised to find that khalīfat Allāh was a title of which most scholars disapproved:\(^88\) deputys of God and passages could also be queried; indeed, were it not for 'Abd al-Malik's coins, all Umayyad attestations of the title khalīfat Allāh could be dismissed as back-projections of a concept current under the 'Abbasids. But if the evidence is good enough for us to accept that Mu'awiya made use of the title, it is also good enough for us to accept that 'Uthmān did so.


83 See the literature cited above, chapter I, note 2.

84 See below, appendix 2.

85 Cf. Ḥassān b. Thābit, no. 160:2 ('Uthmān); Tab., ser. ii, p. 208; Aghānī, vol. xii, p. 74 (Mu'awiya); Jarir, p. 355\(^8\); Rā'i, no. 16:52; Mas., Murūj, vol. iii, §2067 = ν, pp. 308f; Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 355 ('Abd al-Malik); id., vol. i, p. 353\(^3\); Akhṭal, p. 185\(^\circ\) (al-Walid I); Farazdaq, vol. ii, pp. 534\(^8\), 845\(^\circ\) (Hishām); 'Iqd, vol. iv, p. 450\(^\circ\) (khuzzān Allāh fi bilādihi wa-umanā'uhu 'alā 'ibādihi); Tab., ser. ii, p. 1765 (al-Walid II). For numerous 'Abbāsid attestations, see below, chapter 5, note 138.

86 The locus classicus is al-Māwardi, *al-Aḥkām al-sultāniyya*, ed. M. Enger, Bonn 1853, pp. 22f. = E. Fagnan (tr.), *Mawerdi, les statuts gouvernementaux*, Algiers 1915, pp. 29f. (the passage is given in English translation by Lambton, *State and Government*, p. 87; it is misrepresented by H. A. R. Gibb, *Studies on the Civilization of Islam*, London 1962, p. 158). As usual, Ibn al-Farrā' has wording similar to that of al-Māwardi, though he is less disapproving, cf. his *al-Aḥkām al-sultāniyya*, ed. M. H. al-Fiqi, Cairo 1966, p. 27. Cf. also Ibn Khalīdūn, *al-już* al-awwal min kitāb al-ibar (= *al-Muqaddima*), Būlaq 1284, pp. 159f., and Lambton, *op. cit.*, pp. 142, 186. According to al-Māwardi, most 'ulama' considered the title to be unlawful on the ground that God is neither absent nor dead, though some permitted it. It is clear, however, that earlier scholars had objected to it on the ground that it was too exalted: the only khulāfā' Allāh are David and other prophets, as the two 'Umars had been made to exclaim (cf. Margoliouth, *The Sense of the Title Khalīfa*, p. 324; Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, *Sirat 'Umar b. 'Abd
scholars were rivals. By contrast, \textit{khalifat rasūl Allāh} is a considerably more modest designation which, as Nagel notes, makes no claim to a share in the \textit{Rechtleitung} of the Muslims;\textsuperscript{87} successors of the Prophet and scholars could coexist. Given that there were caliphs before there were scholars, one is thus inclined to suspect that it was the scholars rather than the caliphs who changed the original title, or in other words that the scholars claimed a different meaning for it in order to accommodate themselves.\textsuperscript{88} This suspicion is reinforced by three further points.

First, those reported to have rejected the title \textit{khalifat Allāh} add up to Abī Bakr, 'Umar, 'Umar II and the 'ulamā', or in other words the \textit{ulamā} and their favourite mouthpieces. Statements attributed to the first two caliphs and 'Umar II are usually statements by the \textit{ulamā} themselves, especially when the statements in question are of legal or doctrinal significance. Why should statements on the nature of the caliphate be an exception?

Secondly, our sources claim that Abī Bakr and 'Umar rejected the title of \textit{khalifat Allāh} for that of \textit{khalifat rasūl Allāh}, adding an apocryphal story about 'Umar intended to drive home the message that \textit{khalifa} means successor. In other words, \textit{khalifat rasūl Allāh} makes its appearance in a polemical context.

Thirdly, if the caliphate was conceived as successorship to the Prophet, why did the title \textit{khalifat rasūl Allāh} more or less disappear? After Abī Bakr and 'Umar it is not met with until early 'Abbāsid times, or in other words not until the \textit{'ulamā} had acquired influence at court under a regime conscious of its kinship with the Prophet. And even then, it failed to acquire much prominence among the caliphs themselves.

We should like to stress that not all \textit{ulamā} were opposed to the use of \textit{khalifat Allāh}, at least not after they had won the battle for religious authority; even so eminent a Sunnī as al-Ghazālī accepted his caliph as God's deputy on earth.\textsuperscript{89} The title was clearly too

\textsuperscript{87} Nagel, \textit{Rechtleitung}, p. 33.

\textsuperscript{88} Morony rightly suspects that the modern literature is under the spell of 'anti absolutist circles in early Islamic society whose interpretation appears to have triumphed in the area of theory' (M. G. Morony, \textit{Iraq after the Muslim Conquest}, Princeton 1984, p. 580).

\textsuperscript{89} For the scholars in general, see above, note 86; for al-Ghazālī, above, note 38.
embedded in the tradition for total rejection to be possible. But the 'ulamā’ did succeed in depriving it of its historical primacy, or in other words, they succeeded in rewriting history. In attributing their own version of the caliphal title to the first two caliphs they presented an aspect of the present which they disliked as a deviation from a sacred past. This is something which they did time and again, and in so doing they successfully cast the Umayyads as worldly rulers indifferent or even inimical to Islam: time and again it is by their departure from supposedly patriarchal norms that the Umayyads condemn themselves. Contrary to what is often said, it is this manoeuvre rather than 'Abbāsid hostility which accounts for the unfavourable light in which the Umayyads appear in the sources. For the sources are not in fact particularly enthusiastic about the 'Abbāsids, and what is more, the hostility to the Umayyads is too pervasive to reflect the change of dynasty: it is not something added after 750 by way of revision of received history. Naturally there are some stories which reflect 'Abbāsid dislike of the fallen dynasty, just as there are some in which they suddenly appear in a favourable light; but these are surface phenomena which do not greatly affect the reader’s perception of the caliphs in question. The real bias is that of the scholars who transmitted the memory of the past, not that of the rulers who took over while the scholars were thus engaged. Now because the bias is so pervasive, it is hard to free oneself of it. Merely to discount a bit of the iniquity certainly does not help: the question is not whether the Umayyads were more or less iniquitous than made out (presumably they were as bad as rulers tend to be), but whether history had the shape which the scholars attribute to it. In order to answer this question, and indeed to explain why the scholars came to view history as they did, we must read the works of the 'ulamā’ without automatically adopting their perspective. Given that we owe so many of our sources to them, this is by no means easy. Nonetheless, in what follows we hope to show that it can in fact be done.

(and contrast note 67, where Pseudo-Ghazālī applies this title to the sultan rather than the caliph). Ibn Khaldun also accepted that *al-siyāsa wa’l-mulk hiya kafāla li’l-khalq wa-khilāfa li’llāh fi ‘l-ībād li-sanfīdh ahkāmihi fihi (Muqaddima, p. 120).
So far we have established that the caliph seems originally to have been regarded as the deputy of God on earth and that he was certainly thus regarded by the Umayyads. We shall now elaborate on the Umayyad conception of the caliphal function with special reference to their views on the relationship between themselves and the Prophet.

It is a striking fact that such documentary evidence as survives from the Sufyanid period makes no mention of the messenger of God at all. The papyri do not refer to him. The Arabic inscriptions of the Arab-Sasanian coins only invoke Allāh, not his rasūl; and the Arab-Byzantine bronze coins on which Muḥammad appears as rasūl Allāh, previously dated to the Sufyanid period, have now been placed in that of the Marwānids.¹ Even the two surviving pre-Marwānid tombstones fail to mention the rasūl, though both mention Allāh;²

¹ M. Bates, 'The "Arab-Byzantine" Bronze Coinage of Syria: an Innovation by 'Abd al-Malik' in A Colloquium in Memory of George Carpenter Miles, New York 1976, p. 23. This study, which revises Walker's dating, relates to coins whose inscriptions include khāliṣat Allāh as well as rasūl Allāh. It is not mentioned by Rotter, Bürgerkrieg, but it does affect his findings at pp. 34f., where he espouses the view that these coins were struck by Muʿāwiya. It is of course true that the anonymous author of the Maronite Chronicle composed in the mid-660s knew that Muʿāwiya had struck gold and silver coins which did not find favour with the Syrian population because they lacked a cross (Th. Nöldeke, 'Zur Geschichte der Araber im 1. Jahr. d. H. aus Syrischen Quellen', Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft 29 (1875), p. 96); but he tells us nothing of the wording of inscriptions on these coins and makes no reference to bronze coins.

² Š. al-Munajjid, Dirāsāt fī taʾrīkh al-khaṭṭ al-ʿarabī, Beirut 1972, pp. 41, 104. As might be expected, the documentary evidence preserved in the literary sources is less reticent. Thus the seals of ʿAlī and Muʿāwiya on the peace documents drawn up between them are reported to have borne the inscription 'Muḥammed is the messenger of God' (M. Hinds, 'The Siffin Arbitration Agreement', Journal of Semitic Studies 17 (1972), p. 104); indeed, the Prophet is himself supposed to have had a ring with this inscription: it passed from him to Abū Bakr, 'Umar and
and the same is true of Mu‘awiyah’s inscription at Ta‘if. In the Sufyânid period, apparently, the Prophet had no publicly acknowledged role. This is not to say that he did not matter in the Sufyânid period, though exactly what he was taken to be at the time is far from clear; but it does suggest that he played no legitimatory role in Sufyânid political theory. The titulature of the Sufyânids suggests the same: ‘the earth belongs to God, and I am the deputy of God’, as Mu‘awiyah is said to have put it. What the Prophet may or may not have been was not from this point of view of any importance.

All this, of course, changed dramatically on the accession of the Marwânids. In 66/685f. the first known coin identifying Muhammad as rasûl Allâh was struck at Bishâpûr in Fars by a pro-Zubayrid governor, and in 71/690f. the message was repeated on another Arab-Sasanian dirham struck at the same place, this time by a supporter of the Umayyads. Thereafter reference to Muhammad as rasûl Allâh became a standard feature of Arab numismatic inscriptions. Further, in 72/691f. Muhammad and Jesus were both identified as messengers of God in the two long inscriptions on the octagonal arcade of the Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem. During the


5 Cf. above, chapter 2, p. 6. 6 Walker, Catalogue, vol. 1, p. 97.


8 It occurs successively on (a) the Type B imitation solidi struck at Damascus in 72 and/or 73 (G. C. Miles, ‘The Earliest Arab Gold Coinage’, American Numismatic Society Museum Notes 13 (1967), p. 227; (b) the transitional dirhams struck at Damascus in the years 73–5 (Walker, Catalogue, vol. 1, pp. 23–5; Salmân, ‘Dirham nûdîr’); (c) the Standing Caliph dinars of 74–7 (Miles, op. cit., pp. 212–14), and (d) the epigraphic coinage, which apparently started in 77 in the case of dinars and 78 in the case of dirhams and on which three inscriptions are to be found: ‘there is no God but Allâh alone’, ‘Muhammad in the rasûl of Allâh whom He sent with guidance and the religion of truth, that He might make it victorious over all religions’ (an approximation to Qur‘ân, 9: 33), and ‘Allâh is One, Allâh is the Everlasting, He did not beget, nor was He begotten’ (an apocopated version of sûrat al-ikhlâs) (Walker, Catalogue, vol. 11, p. ivi).

governorship of 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Marwān, or in other words between 65/685 and 85f./704f., Muḥammad made his first appearance, once more as rasūl Allāh, in the papyrus protocols of Egypt.10 And the same 'Abd al-'Azīz is also reported to have given orders for all crosses to be broken and for there to be fixed on the doors of the churches in Egypt posters stating that 'God did not beget, nor was He begotten' and that 'Muḥammad is the great messenger of God and Jesus also is the messenger of God'.11

However the Sufyānids may have conceived of Muḥammad, the Marwānids thus unambiguously identified him as the founder of their faith. But it is clear from the context in which they made their public affirmation of his status that they were motivated more by a desire to establish the credentials of Islam over and above other faiths (notably Christianity) than by a wish to emphasise his continuing importance within the Islamic world; and though the escalation of Muḥammad into a fully-fledged founder-prophet was indeed to undermine the position of the caliphs in the long run, as will be seen, in the short run it merely contributed to the rupture of relations between 'Abd al-Malik and Justinian II in c. 692, if it did even that.12 There is nothing in all this to inform us of the caliph's perception of Muḥammad from an inner-Islamic point of view.

For such a perception we may turn to a long letter written by al-Walīd II to the garrison cities concerning the designation of his successors. This letter, to which we have referred already, is the most detailed document that we possess in respect of what may be termed


12 The question still has not been fully resolved. The Muslim accounts preserve a memory that the wording on papyrus protocols was somehow connected with the coinage and the rupture in relations (the main texts are Ibn Qutayba, 'Uyūn al-akhbār, Cairo 1925-30, vol. 1, pp. 198f.; al-Balādhuri, Futūḥ al-buldān, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1866, p. 240; al-Bayhaqī, Kitāb al-maḥāsin wa'l-masāwī, ed. F. Schwally, Giessen 1902, pp. 498-502; al-Damīrī, Hayāt al-hayawān, Būlāq 1284, vol. 1, pp. 79-81). On the Byzantine side, Theophanes specifies 'Abd al-Malik's striking of coin as one of the issues in the rupture of relations with Justinian II but makes no mention of papyri (Chronographia, ed. C. de Boor, Leipzig 1883-5, vol. 1, p. 365; cf. also J. D. Breckenridge, The Numismatic Iconography of Justinian II (685-695, 705-711 A.D.), New York 1959, p. 73); while Nicephorus and Michael the Syrian make no mention of either papyri or coinage in that connection.
the Umayyad theory of state, and its importance (first recognised by Dennett) is such that we give a full translation of it in appendix 2. Al-Walid here sketches out a salvation history divided into two eras, one of prophets and another of caliphs. The first era began in aboriginal times when God chose Islam as the religion for Himself and mankind, or, as we might put it, established a religion for Himself and mankind which He chose to call Islam. Having done so, He sent messengers to inform mankind about it, but without success, or so at least it is implied; there is a lacuna in the text at this point, but we know this part of the story from the Qur'an, according to which nation upon nation received a messenger, only to be destroyed when his message was spurned. In due course, however, the messenger Muhammad met with success. This messenger did not preach anything new; on the contrary, he confirmed the message of previous prophets, God having gathered unto him everything that He had bestowed on them. But now that God had finally got His message through, there was no need for further messengers, and God thus sealed His revelation with him. Muhammad represented the culmination of prophethood and on his death the era of the prophets came to an end. The era of the caliphs began when, on the death of Muhammad, God raised up deputies to administer the legacy of His prophets. Specifically, their task was to see to the implementation and observance of God's sunna, hukm, hudud, fara'id and huqûq, 'normative practice, decree, restrictive statutes, ordinances and rights' (as we have chosen to translate the terms in question), and thus to maintain Islam. The bulk of the letter is devoted to the supreme importance of obedience to God's caliphs: whoever obeys will flourish, and whoever disobeys will be punished in both this world and the next, as we are told time and again.

What is so striking about this letter is that caliphs are in no way subordinated to prophets (let alone to the Prophet). Prophets and caliphs alike are seen as God's agents, and both dutifully carry out the tasks assigned to them, the former by delivering messages and the latter by putting them into effect. The caliphs are the legatees of prophets in the sense that they administer something established by them, but they do not owe their authority to them (let alone to Muhammad on his own). Their authority comes directly from God. In other words, formerly God used prophets, now He uses caliphs. There is no sense here that God has stopped ruling His adherents directly, or that the caliphate is a mere Ersatzinstitution, a second-rate surrogate for the direct guidance which they enjoyed in the days of
Muhammad⁸. Muhammad is still a prophet with a small ‘p’. Obviously he was the prophet most relevant to al-Walid and his subjects, being a successful messenger who worked among Arabs and who created the community of which God had now put al-Walid in charge. But he was still one out of many, and he stood at the end of an era, not at the beginning of one. Messengers belonged to the past: the present had been made over to caliphs.

There is considerable evidence to suggest that al-Walid’s conception of the relationship between prophets and caliphs was that espoused by the Umayyads at large. As regards the Sufyānids, the absence of public reference to Muḥammad on the one hand and the adoption of the title khalīfah Allāh on the other would suggest a similar (or possibly more radical) conception. As regards the Marwānids, al-Walid’s views are echoed in letters by Yazīd III and Marwān II in a manner suggesting that his sacred history came out of a standard file in the bureaucracy; and they are also reflected in the stories in which Umayyad governors and others credit God’s deputy with a status higher than that of His messenger.

Of such there are many. Thus al-Ḥajjāj is said to have written a letter to ‘Abd al-Malik expressing the opinion that God held His khalīfa on earth in higher regard than His rasūl (inna khalīfah Allāh fi ardīhi [var. ummatīhi] akram ‘alayhi min rasūlihi ilayhim), preferring His khalīfa over both angels and prophets (al-khalīfah ‘inda ’llāh afdal min al-malā‘ika al-muqarrabīn wa’l-anbiyyā’ al-mursalīn; note the plural here).⁴ He expressed the same view to Mutarrīf b. al-Mughira (‘Abd al-Malik khalīfah Allāh wa-huwa akram ‘alā Allāh min rusulīhi; note the plural again).⁵ He was also of the opinion that those who circumambulated the tomb of Muḥammad in Medina should rather circumambulate the palace of ‘Abd al-Malik, since one’s deputy is

---

13 Nagel, Rechtleitung, passim.
14 In addition to the letter by Yazīd III translated in appendix 2, see that by ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Yahyā in Șafwat, Rasā’il, vol. ii, pp. 552f. This letter, too, starts with an account of how God chose Islam for Himself, etc, culminating with the prophethood of Muhammad; and though the era of the caliphs has been omitted, it continues by giving praise to God alladhi tammama w’dahu li-rasūlihi wa-khalīfatihi fi ummat nabiyyihi (written as a letter of congratulation on conquest, it presumably refers to Marwān II, in so far as it is not simply a model.) Note also the resonances of al-Walid II’s formulae in the letter by Marwān II in Tab., ser. ii, p. 1850.
16 al-Balādḥūrī, Ansāb al-ashrāf, ms Süleymaniye (Reisūlkuttap) no. 598, vol. ii, fol. 28b.
better than one's messenger. And in the course of a Friday oration he is said to have asked the rhetorical question whether any member of the audience would prefer his messenger over his deputy. Khālid al-Qasrī is reported to have asked the same question in the course of an address in Mecca at the time of al-Walīd I or, according to another version, Hishām: 'who is mightier, a man's khalīfa over his ahl or his rasūl to them?'. Allegedly, he bluntly stated that God had a higher regard for the amīr al-mu'minin than for His anbiyā' (once more in the plural). The rhetorical question was also put to Hishām, who is said not to have rejected the inference that God must have a higher regard for His khalīfa than for His rasūl. As told, these stories sound like frivolous, indeed blasphemous, flatteries; but what they illustrate is precisely the point that khalīfa and rasūl were once seen as independent agents of God: this is why they are comparable. The caliph is here given the edge over the prophet on the ground that whereas a messenger simply delivers a message, a deputy is authorised to act on behalf of his employer, and this sounds strained because it is clear that everyone knew better: what is being offered is simply a clever argument. The stories presuppose both that the last prophet had begun to acquire his capital 'P' at the cost of earlier prophets and subsequent caliphs alike, and that parity between them was the starting point. In the early days of the dynasty when somebody reminded Mu'āwiya that he was mortal 'like previous prophets and caliphs of God', the speaker took this parity for granted.  

19 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1199 (al-Walīd I); Aghānī, vol. xxii, p. 18 (Hishām); cf. also M. J. Kister, 'Some Reports Concerning Mecca from Jāhiliyya to Islam', Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient 15 (1972), p. 91, citing al-Fākhi. Al-Walīd did not however have any doubt that a nābi khalīfa (such as David) was more highly regarded by God than a khalīfa who was not a nābi ('Iqd, vol. i, p. 71f).  
21 al-Dinawarī, al-Akhbār al-tiwāl, ed. Guirgass, Leiden 1888, p. 346, where Hishām's interlocutor is named as 'Abdallāh b. Sayfī; cf. also Tab., ser. ii, pp. 1818f., where he is Ibn ShQY and Khālid al-Qasrī is outraged by the argument; and al-Maqrīzī, Nizā', p. 29.  
22 Daḥḥāk b. Qays in connection with the bay'a to Yazīd I in Ibn Qutayba, Imāma, pp. 156f. Note also the amusing story in Tab., ser. ii, pp. 206f.; Bal., Ans., vol.
Fuller evidence, however, is available in Umayyad poetry, most of it Marwanid. It cannot be said that complete parity obtains between prophets and caliphs here. The poets speak of the Prophet rather than prophets, and they automatically assume him to rank higher than caliphs;\textsuperscript{33} caliphs only rank higher than the rest of mankind.\textsuperscript{24} Even so, the Prophet’s edge is thin. Caliphs are inferior only in that they do not receive revelation; and if God had not restricted the gift of prophecy to prophets, the caliphs would have been messengers themselves, as we are told with reference to Yazīd II\textsuperscript{25} and Hishām.\textsuperscript{26} (Thomson’s claim that al-Farazdaq credits ‘Abd al-Malik with the gift of prophethood is not however correct.)\textsuperscript{27}

\textsuperscript{23} Thus Yazīd II was the best of the people on earth – the living and the dead – except for him through whom the \textit{din al-bariyya} shone forth (Farazdaq, vol. II, p. 432\textsuperscript{3}), apart from the Prophet, he was also the best of people in terms of parentage (\textit{ibid.}, vol. II, p. 434\textsuperscript{4}); he had nobody above him except God and \textit{nubuwwa} (\textit{ibid.}, p. 682, last two lines). Hishām was the son of the best people, Muhammad and his Companions excepted (\textit{ibid.}, p. 535\textsuperscript{5}). There has been no shepherd on earth to compare with Sulaymān, not that is since the death of the Prophet and ‘Uthmān (\textit{ibid.}, p. 637, ult.); there has been no shepherd in Islam to compare with Yazīd II, once more with the qualification ‘since Muhammad and his companions’ (\textit{ibid.}, p. 889\textsuperscript{6}).

\textsuperscript{24} That much is clear from the references given in the previous note. In addition, however, we are told that ‘Abd al-Malik was \textit{khāliṣ al-bariyya} (Akhtāl, p. 74\textsuperscript{7}), that Sulaymān was \textit{khāliṣ al-nās} (Farazdaq, vol. II, p. 623\textsuperscript{8}), and that al-Walīd II was \textit{khāliṣ al-bariyya kullihā} (\textit{ibid.}, p. 510\textsuperscript{9}); al-Rā’ī thought that there was nobody like himself in Syria, except for the imam (no. 16:47). Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyāt thought Muṣ‘āb the best of people, the \textit{amir al-mu'minīn} excepted (no. 51:2). And after the death of the Prophet nobody’s death was so highly lamented as that of al-Hājāj except for those of caliphs (Farazdaq, vol. II, p. 529, ult.; cf. p. 495\textsuperscript{10}, where the same is said of al-Hājāj’s relatives).

\textsuperscript{25} If Jesus had not foretold and described the Prophet, Yazīd II would have been taken for one; and though he was not a prophet, he would still be the companion of one in Paradise, along with Abū Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmān (Farazdaq, vol. I, p. 264\textsuperscript{11}); if there were to be a \textit{nabi} after the \textit{muṣafā}, it would be Yazīd II that God would choose (\textit{ibid.}, vol. II, p. 829\textsuperscript{12}).

\textsuperscript{26} Farazdaq, vol. II, p. 846\textsuperscript{13}-\textsuperscript{4}, where \textit{dhawū ’l-ʿilm} who \textit{takallamū bihiʾan rasūl Allāh} say that if the holy spirit were sent to other than prophets, Hishām would be in receipt of revelation.

\textsuperscript{27} W. Thomson, ‘The Character of Early Islamic Sects’ in Ignace Goldziher \textit{Memorial Volume}, ed. S. Löwinger and J. Somogyi, Budapest 1948, p. 92, repeated by Ringgren, ‘Some Religious Aspects’, p. 739, and Morony, \textit{Iraq}, pp. 480f. Thomson was misled by R. Boucher (ed. and tr.), \textit{Divan de Ferazdak}, Paris 1870, p. 626 of the French text, where Farazdaq is made to say that the imam ‘qui a reçu (du Seigneur le don de) prophétie brisera leur pièges’; what he actually said was that ‘the one who has bestowed prophecy (sc. God) broke their guile’ (with reference to ‘Abd al-Malik’s victory over Ibn al-Ash‘ath, cf. \textit{ibid.}, p. 208\textsuperscript{14} of the Arabic text = Farazdaq, vol. I, p. 296\textsuperscript{15}).
Indeed, Marwān I was an imam to whom prostration (sujud) would have been made were it not for the nubuwwa. As in the letter of al-Walid II, the caliphs are the legatees of prophets. From Abraham they have inherited every treasury and every prophetic book, and they fight with the swords of prophethood, by right of prophethood, above all, of course, the prophethood of Muḥammad, whose covenant they implement. But though Muḥammad is now clearly invoked to legitimate the caliphate, it is to God on the one hand and 'Uthmān on the other that the caliphs are directly indebted for their authority. The earth belongs to God, who has appointed His khilāfah to it', as al-Farazdaq put it, echoing Mu'āwiya. 'God has garlanded you with caliphate and guidance', as Jarir said. The caliph is God's trustee (amin Allāh), God's governor, and governor on behalf of truth. He is God's chosen one, as several poets state. But the reason why God chooses Umayyads rather than others is that the Umayyads are kinsmen of 'Uthmān. There is no lack of dynastic legitimism in this poetry, the fact that a particular caliph has inherited his authority being stressed time and again. Ultimately, they have

32 Addayya alladhiʾ ahada al-rasūl, as Jarir tells Sulaymān (p. 432); al-Walid I was wali li-ʾahd Allāh (ibid., p. 384) or wali ʾahd Muḥammad (Farazdaq, vol. ii, p. 418).
33 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 25.
34 Jarir, 474.
35 Cf. above, chapter 2, note 85.
36 Farazdaq, vol. ii, pp. 794 (antum wulāt Allāh), 852 (wali al-haqq); Jarir, pp. 390 (wulār al-haqq), 508 (wali il-haqq).
37 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 296 (in general); vol. ii, pp. 433 (Yazīd II), 785, cf. 840 (Hishām); Jarir, p. 492 (al-Walid I); Ibn Surayj citing al-Aḥwāṣ in Aghānī, vol. i, p. 298 (al-Walid I); Ruʿba b. al-ʿAjjāj in W. Ahlwardt (ed. and tr.), Sammlungen alter arabischer Dichter, vol. iii, Berlin 1903, no. 61:195 (p. 113) (Marwān II).
38 Farazdaq, vol. i, pp. 88 (you are the sixth of six caliphs, father, uncle, 'Uthmān, etc), 169 (you have inherited from Ibn Ḥarb, Ibn Marwān and the one through whom God helped Muḥammad), 174 (the son of two imams whose father was also an imam); vol. ii, pp. 418 (al-Walid inherited the caliphate from seven ancestors, including 'Uthmān), 655, 656 (Sulaymān inherited the caliphate from his father/was given it by God, either way not by ghaṣb), 704 (al-Walid I inherited mulk from his father like Solomon from David), 768 (God caused al-Walid to inherit mulk, the contrast with ghaṣb being stressed once more), 829 (turāth Abīʾl-ʿĀṣ), 846 (B. Marwān inherited the emblems of power), 852 (they did not inherit it kalālar, i.e. from a collateral or distant ancestor), 853 (they inherited the caliphate of a rightly guided one). The theme is much less prominent in Jarir, but cf. pp. 149, ult., and 367 (are you not the son of the imams of
God’s Caliph

inherited it from ‘Uthmān,39 a friend and helper of Muhammad’s,40 who was chosen by a shūrā41 and raised up by God Himself,42 and who was thus a legitimate caliph wrongfully killed.43 In raising up Umayyad caliphs, God gives His deputy something to which He has a hereditary right.44 The Umayyads have always been caliphs and always will be, we are assured.45 In short, the Umayyads are God’s chosen lineage.

It is clear from this that, as far as the Umayyads were concerned, the Umayyad period began with ‘Uthmān, not with Muʿāwiya, and this makes sense, given that they never regarded ‘Alī as anything but a pretender. There is a case for adopting the periodisation proposed by the Umayyads themselves; after all, the classical view that ‘Alī was the fourth caliph reflects doctrinal developments of the ninth century, not contemporary opinion: in contemporary perspective ‘Alī was a pretender, on a par with the other protagonists of the first civil war.46 More importantly in the present contest, however, it is also clear that the growing prominence of Muḥammad was bad for Umayyad dynastic legitimacy. As long as Muḥammad belonged to another era, it was enough to have been chosen by God Himself, but not so when he had come to initiate the present: at this point some direct link with

Quraysh, addressed to ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. al-Walīd; cf. al-Farazdaq, vol. ii, p. 656,47 where it is addressed to Sulaymān). Both state that the Umayyads have inherited an exalted building (Jarīr, p. 2564; Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 2664). Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyāt stresses that they have ‘inherited the minbar of khilīfa’ (no. 2:10). Cf. also ‘Urwa b. Udhayna, p. 28147.

40 Farazdaq, vol. i, pp. 1694, (the one through whom God helped Muhammad), 314 (khāīf al-nabī al-muṣṭafā wa-muḥājiruḥu), 904 (khāīf Muḥammad wa-imām ḥaqq and the fourth of the best to tread the ground).

41 Farazdaq, vol. i, pp. 2654–4 (‘Uthmān’s power went back to a waṣiyya min Abī Ḥafṣ, he was chosen by the Muhājirūn; compare vol. i, p. 867 on waṣiyyat thāni ‘thnayn bāda Muḥammad’); vol. ii, p. 4185 (again stressing inheritance from ‘Uthmān).

42 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 7684.

43 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 3126, 3296; vol. ii, pp. 4196, 7684–8; Rāʾī, no. 58:54; cf. also ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zabīr’s reference to 80,000 people led by Gabriel (apparently the Syrian army at the time of al-Mukhtar) whose din was the din of ‘Uthmān (Shīr, ed. Y. al-Jubūrī, Baghdad 1974, p. 78).

44 This point is made with particular clarity by al-Farazdaq (vol. ii, p. 7684–9, addressed to al-Walīd I); and al-Akhtal puts it very succinctly: a’ṭakum Allāh ma antum āḥaqq bīh5 (p. 735).


him was required. It was all very well to argue that 'Uthmān had been his friend and helper, and that his own Companions had elected him caliph, but such arguments did not carry much weight. Once the Prophet had acquired his capital 'P', straight descent from him was an unbeatable claim.

But though the Prophet had begun to undermine the claim of the Umayyads to the caliphate by the time the poets start to speak of him, he still had not affected the nature of the caliphate itself. It is the nature of the caliphate which concerns us here, and on this point the poets are of riveting interest. In essence their message is that however important the Prophet may have been in the past and indeed still is, the caliphs are central to the faith here and now.

The caliphs are central to the faith in two ways. First, they are 'the tent pegs of our religion' (awtād dīnīn), not just in the sense that they keep the community of believers together, defend it and see to its administration, but more particularly in the sense that without them, it would ipso facto cease to be a religious community. 'Were it not for the caliph and the Qur'ān he recites, people would have no judgements established for them and no communal worship', Jarīr declared. He who does not hold fast to God's trustee will not benefit from the five prayers' (man lam yākun bi-amīn Allāh mu'tasim an fa-laysa bi'l-ṣalawāt al-khams yantaftu), an 'Abbasid poet echoed with reference to Hārūn. Three centuries later al-Ghazālī was similarly to argue that if the caliphate was deemed to have come to an end, all religious institutions would be in a state of suspension and all acts performed under Islamic law deprived of their validity. In other words, there is no umma without an imām: it is the leader who constitutes the community, and without him God's ordinances cannot be implemented. It is in this vein that the caliphs are described as 'the imams of those who pray', that 'Umar II is told that he has become an adornment of the abiding minbar, and that numerous other caliphs are flattered with reference to the judgements established by them.

48 Jarīr, p. 355*: An alternative reading is 'and the Qur'ān we recite'.
49 Aghānī, vol. xix, p. 74, where the poem, described as qawl al-Namari fi 'l-Rashīd, is recited to al-Mu'taṣīm; al-Khaṭṭāb al-Baghdādi, vol. iv, p. 150.
50 Ghazālī, Faddā'ih, ch. 9; al-Zāhiri (d. 872/1462) also refers to this argument (Zubda, p. 89).
51 Cf. al-Walīd II's letter, below appendix 2, where it is for the implementation of these ordinances that the caliphate is instituted. 52 Jarīr, p. 511*.
53 Jarīr, p. 275*. Compare ibid., p. 508*, where Hishām is wali al-haqq who leads the pilgrimage. 54 Cf. below, chapter 4.
Secondly, the caliph is ‘like the qibla through which every erring person is guided away from error’. The role of the imam is not only to validate the community of believers, but also to be its source of guidance (hudā), a prerequisite for salvation. Salvation was seen primarily as a matter of finding the right path, and what the Prophet had done was precisely to bring guidance at a time when ‘the waymarks of truth had become effaced’. Islam itself was synonymous with right guidance, and it is above all with such guidance that the poets associate the caliphate.

Thus it is with khilāfa and hudā that God has invested the caliphs according to Jarir. The caliph is ‘the khalīfa of God among His subjects through whom He guides mankind after fitna’, and the imam in the furthest mosque through whom the hearts of the perplexed are guided away from error’. The Umayyads unite people on guidance after their views have diverged. They and their governors make plain the subul al-hudā, ‘the paths of guidance’. ‘Through you He has guided every confused person’, al-Farazdaq says. The caliph is imām al-hudā, ‘imam of guidance’, and as such

56 Cf. appendix 2, p. 119.
57 Muhammad was sent with hudā and din al-haqq, as the epigraphic coinage proclaims, echoing Qur. 9: 33 (cf. above, note 8); compare also the formula al-salām ‘alā man ittaba‘a ‘l-hudā, used in letters to infidels (fī khīṭāb al-kāfir, Qalqashandī, Subh, vol. vi, p. 366, with sundry examples in the following pages; there are numerous early examples in the Quarra papyri, cf. for example A. Grohmann, From the World of Arabic Papyri, Cairo 1952, pp. 125ff.; there are also numerous early examples of Muslims using it in letters to Muslim opponents, cf. Ṣafwat, Rasā‘il, vol. ii, pp. 105, 179, 288, 300). Muhammad was thus nabi al-hudā (see for example Ḥassān b. Thābit, no. 22: 12; al-Walīd b. Yazīd, Shīr, ed. H. ‘Aṭwān, ‘Ammān 1979, p. 61; Wāqī’, Qudāh, vol. i, p. 216); he was also imām al-hudā (see for example al-Nu‘mān b. Bashīr, Shīr, ed. Y. W. al-Jubūrī, n.p. 1968, no. 4:28; cf. 22:26), what he had brought being hudā (ibid., no. 4: 12) or a religion in which there was hudā and sharī‘a (‘Abbas b. Mirdās in Ibn Hishām, al-Sīra al-nabawiyya, ed. M. al-Saqqā and others, second printing, Cairo 1955, vol. ii, p. 464); and so on.
58 Jarīr, p. 474.
62 Jarīr, p. 90 (of al-Ḥajjāj); compare Nābighat B. Shaybān, p. 29 on Umayya (subul al-haqq).
63 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 329; cf. also Jarīr, pp. 41, 45 (where the Tamim who have repented of their ‘Alīd sympathies are said to have returned to ḥusn al-hudā), 384, 440, 474.
64 ‘Abd al-Malik referred to the Zubayrid insurrection as one directed against a‘immat al-hudā (Tab., ser. ii, p. 743). A’shā B. Taghlib remembered al-Walīd I, as an imām hudā (Aghānī, vol. xi, p.283). Yazīd II was likewise praised as an
he is associated with light. He is 'guidance and light'; the light of the land. and the one ‘through whose light every seeker of guidance is guided to hudā’. He is ‘a light which has illuminated the land for us’, the moon by which we are guided. He sets up a 'beacon of guidance' (manār an li'l-hudā) wherever he goes. His kinsmen and governors are similarly ‘lights of guidance’, full moons, stars and the like. He disperses darkness and makes the blind see. He revives both land and souls, being rain (ghayth) in both a literal and a metaphorical sense: one asks for rain no less than for guidance from him.

imām hudā by Kuthayyir, though the line is also said to have been addressed to 'Abd al-Malik (Kuthayyir 'Azza, Diwān, ed. I. 'Abbās, Beirut 1971, p. 342); cf. the editorial introduction to this poem); Yazid II was also an imam of guidance according to al-Farazdaq (vol. ii, p. 433: imām al-hudā wa'l-mustafā 'l-muntasqar). So was Hishām, indeed the Marwānid caliphs in general, according to the same poet (vol. ii, p. 846). A poem in which 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Marwān is prematurely described as khaltīfa characterizes him and his son as imāmay hudā too (Kindī, Governors, p. 56). As so often, the Zubayrids were praised in the same terms as the Umayyads: Muṣ'ab b. al-Zubayr was an imam of guidance according to al-Muhallab's troops (Tab., ser. ii, p. 821).


68 Akhtal, p. 74.

69 Farazdaq, vol. ii, p. 704; cf. also p. 433; Jarīr, p. 254, (God gave Yazid II a mulk waḏiḥ al-nūr); Nābighat B. Shayaḥbān, p. 49 (Yazid II as light); B. Šabba in Aghānī, vol. vii, p. 991 (al-Walid II is an imām yūḏīhu 'l-haqq lahu nūr 'alā nūr).


72 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 289, 296, 329 ult.; vol. ii, pp. 61911, 62010, 7858, 8308; Rā'i, no. 16:53; Qutāmi, p. 14818.

73 Farazdaq, vol. i, pp. 2894, 329 ult., 352; Rā'i, no. 16:53.


75 Farazdaq, vol. ii, pp. 541, 638, 7671 (ghayth al-bilād wa'nūr al-nās fi 'l-zulam), 8314, 8458, 8894; Jarīr, p. 274; Ru'ba, no. 39:41 (p. 103); B. Surayj citing al-'Aḥwās and 'Adī b. al-Riqā in Aghānī, vol. i, p. 298, 3008; 'Abbās b. Muhammad in Aghānī, vol. xxiv, p. 217; for al-Walid II's accession as māṭar, see Walid, Shīr, p. 55. For the caliph through whom rain is sought (yustasqḏ bihi 'l-māṭar, see above, chapter 2, pp. 8f., and Ringgren, 'Some Religious Aspects').
The caliph is a source of guidance because he is himself blessed and rightly guided. 'Uthman was a khalīfat mahdiyyan, 'a rightly guided caliph', as Mu'āwiya's messengers told 'Ali. As far as al-Ḥajjāj was concerned, Abū Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthmān, Mu'āwiya and 'Abd al-Malik were the four (sic) khulafa' al-rashidūn al-muḥtadūn al-mahdiyyūn. Similarly, in poetry 'Abd al-Malik is al-mubārak yahdī Allāh shī'atuhu, 'the blessed one [through whom] God guides His adherents'. Sulaymān is the mahdi, the rightly guided one, through whom God guides whoever is in fear of going astray, and through whom He disperses darkness; he is also the mubārak and mahdi who makes plain the road, and through whom 'God has delivered us from evil'. 'Umar II was al-mubārak al-mahdi sīratuhu, 'the blessed one whose conduct is rightly guided'; he is also the mahdi in prose. Yazīd II is al-mubārak al-maymūn sīratuhu, 'the blessed one whose conduct is auspicious' and to whom God has given ra'fat mahdiyyan, 'the mercy of a rightly guided one'. Hishām is al-mahdi wa'l-hakam al-rashīd, 'the rightly guided one and the judge who follows the right path', as well as 'the mahdi in whom we seek refuge when frightened'. Al-Walīd II is both the mahdi and al-qā'id al-maymūn wa'l-muḥtadā bihi, 'the auspicious leader and the one by whom one is guided'. 'Stand up, O Commander of the Faithful, mhadiyyan', as Yazīd III was told, though not by a poet. In poetry the Umayyads in general are hudiit wa-mahdiyyun, 'guiding and rightly guided'.

Being mahdiyyun, the caliphs are strongly associated with justice. The justice of caliphal sunna loosens burdens and heals: 'through
the justice of your hands you heal the sicknesses of breasts'; 94 'through your justice you have cured everyone who thirsts'. 95 'Come to Islam, justice is with us', as we are told. 96 Adherents of 'Uthmān held this caliph to have been an imām 'adil; 97 Mu'āwiya was an imām 'ādil; 98 'Abd al-Malik was flattered as khalīfat al-'adl, 99 an epithet also attested for 'Umar II, 100 who elsewhere appears as al-imām al-'ādil; 101 and both Yazīd II and Hishām were described as imām al-'adl. 102 The Commander of the Faithful is imām an wa'ad/U'Ii' 1-bariyya, Jarīr said with reference to 'Abd al-Malik. 103 According to al-Farazdaq, Sulaymān made every place of oppression (jawr) a place of justice ('adl). 104 Hishām filled the earth with justice and light. 105 He also filled it with mercy (rahma), 106 and with light, mercy, justice and rain, having been placed over the people as a source of security and mercy (amn wa-raḥmat). 107

Though mahdī is evidently not an eschatological epithet in these passages, it is hard to avoid the impression that the term refers to a redeemer. The mahdī of court poetry is not simply a person who walks in the right path, 108 but rather a deliverer from evil – someone who fills the earth with justice, mercy and light, who heals and who vivifies. 'He answered our prayer and saved us from evil through the caliphate of the mahdī', as al-Farazdaq said with reference to Sulaymān. 109 But this is not a point we wish to pursue in this

95 Farazdaq, vol. 1, p. 329ª; compare vol. ii, p. 839, ult., where we are told of Hishām that he 'brought the sunna of the two 'Umars in which there is shifā' li'l-ṣudūr min al-saqām'.
97 Muḥārib b. Dīthār in Wakī', Ḍudd, vol. iii, p. 29.
98 'Iqd, vol. i, p. 46ª.
99 Jarīr, p. 440ª.
100 Ibn Sa'd, Tabaqāt, vol. v, p. 387.
101 Jarīr, p. 415ª.
102 Jarīr, pp. 256ª, 505ª.
103 Jarīr, p. 440ª.
104 Farazdaq, vol. ii, p. 639ª; for other statements on the justice of this caliph, see above, note 87.
109 Above, note 76.
chapter. What we do wish to stress is that salvation was perceived as coming through the caliph; and we should like to illustrate this further with reference to two notions commonly attested in both poetry and prose.

First, the caliphs (or the caliphal institution) are described as 'refuge' or 'stronghold' (iṣma), a word with Qur'anic resonance (cf. 3:96, 'he who seeks refuge in/holds fast to God (ya'taṣsimū bi'llāh) is guided to a straight path'). The metaphor conveys that it was the caliphs who saved the believers from error in both a political and a religious sense, or, as others put it, that the caliphs were the pillars of the religion. 'God... created from among His creatures servants whom He placed as tent-pegs for the pillars of His religion; they are His guardians [ruqabā'] over the land and His deputies [khulafa'] over the servants, and through them He has turned darkness into light, united the religion, strengthened that which is certain, granted victory, and put down the overmighty', the future Marwān I told Mu‘āwiya. ‘God has made you a refuge (iṣma) for His friends and a source of injury for His enemies... through you God, exalted is He, makes the blind see and guides the enemies [to the truth]', ‘Abdallah b. Mas‘āda al-Fazārī told the same caliph, conveying much the same message. ‘Through him God protected (aṣama) mankind from perdition’, as a poet said of Mu‘āwiya in a poem to Yazid I. The caliph was a fortress (hiṣn), or ‘a cave in which you seek refuge’ (ta’wīna), as Ziyād b. Abīhi put it, just as he was ‘the mahdi in whom we seek refuge (naẓa‘u) when we are afraid’, as Jarīr said of Hishām. He was an iṣma against tyranny, and thus a iṣma for orphans, but above all he was a refuge against that disunity which inevitably meant dispersal from the paths of guidance. The caliphate, We shall return to it below, appendix I.


111 Aghānī, vol. xii, p. 74*; note that Mu‘āwiya is amīn Allāh in the preceding line.


113 Tab., ser. ii, p. 75.

114 Above, note 88.


116 Jarīr, p. 218, penult. (of Yazid II).
The Umayyad conception of the caliphate

or rather obedience to it, was a 'isma, mafṣa, multaja', lamm il-l-sha' th, wizr, man'a against firāq and something which protects people (ya'simuhum) against all ikhtilāf and shiqāq, according to al-Wafid II.119 It is in this vein that 'Abdallāh b. al-Zabīr told 'Abd al-Malik that 'you have protected us (ašamtanā) with Bishr', who was al-qā'id al-maymun and al-isma, the ḥaqq of which did away with everything bāţil.120 The caliph was a 'isma mukhayyira bayna 'l-t/alī/a wa'l-rushd for people, as Zulzul and/or others were later to say with reference to al-Ma'mūn.121 In short, the caliph was a refuge against error. Whoever clung to his 'isma would be saved, whoever ignored it would be damned: one would not seek refuge in God and thus be guided to a straight path without holding fast to His khalīfa.

Secondly, the caliphs (and the caliphal institution) are identified with God's rope, another Qur'ānic concept (cf. 3:98, 'and hold you fast to God's rope (wa-tṣimū bi-ḥabl Allāh), together, and do not scatter'). Thus Mu'āwiya was 'an imam and a firm rope for mankind',122 or, in the words of his son Yazīd, ḥabl min ḥibāl Allāh.123 'Your rope is God's rope', al-Farazdaq told Yazīd II and Hishām, stressing that whoever took hold of it would find it unbreakable.124 'Whoever holds fast to your rope [you will find that] the blindness of his eyes disappears', the same poet said to al-Wafid I.125 According to al-Wafid II, God had a strengthened the strands of His rope through His caliphs.126 The caliph was thus seen as a lifeline to God, 'someone who stands between God and His servants', as an early author, reputedly al-Ḥasan al- Başrī, said with reference to the imām al-ʿadl,127 or as 'the rope extended between God and His creation', as al-Mutawakkil was pleased to be told.128

The concept

119 Cf. appendix 2, pp. 120ff. Compare also Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 289: the Marwānids have made the religion of Muḥammad triumph after ikhtilāf al-nās. Similarly ibid., p. 63 (God has united the prayer through Marwān). Cf. also the reference given above, note 61.

120 Ibn al-Zabīr, p. 111. Compare Aghānī, vol. xii, p. 74, where Yazīd I is told that his father was amin Allāh through whom God protected (ašama) people from harm. For al-Wafid II as 'isma, see Aghānī, vol. iv, p. 314; compare also Akhtal, p. 185, on al-Wafid I.

121 See the references given below, chapter 5, note 154.


125 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 3522.

126 Cf. appendix 2, p. 120.


128 Tab., ser. iii, p. 1387.
of the caliph as God’s rope conveys much the same message as that of the caliph as a refuge: whoever holds fast to this rope is saved, whoever ‘scatters’ loses the paths of guidance. And both concepts underscore the fact that allegiance to a caliph was a precondition for salvation. Like the pope, the caliph presided over a religious community outside which no ritual act had any effect. ‘Were it not for the caliph and the book he recites, people would have no judgements established for them and no communal worship’, as Jarir said. 129 ‘Whoever dies without an imam dies a Jahili death’, as even classical tradition states. 130 The Prophet had brought guidance in the past: like the caliphs he was both mahdi and imām al-hudā. 131 But it was the caliphs who dispensed this guidance here and now. It is in this vein that Jarir enumerates nubuwwa, khilāfa and hudū as more or less synonymous terms, 132 while al-Farazdaq speaks of the a’wād al-khila’fa wa’d-salām, ‘the staffs of the caliphate and salvation’. 133 Muḥammad might have become sayyid al-mursalin at the expense of previous prophets and subsequent caliphs alike; but without these caliphs, the believers still had no access to his legacy. 134

It is for this reason that what looks to us like a choice between political rivals was in fact a religious one in early Islam. To give allegiance to an imam was to affiliate oneself to a guide who might

129 Above, note 48.
130 Ibn Ḥanbal, Musnad, vol. iv, p. 96. Compare man māta wa-lā bay’a alayhi māta mītāt al-jāhiliyya (Ibn Sa’d, Ṭabaqāt, vol. v, p. 144); man fārāqa al-jamā’ī shibran fa-[mā] mītāt illā mītāt al-jāhiliyya and man māta wa-qad naza’a yadahu min bay’a kānāt mītatuhi mītāt qālāla (listed by A. J. Wensinck and others, Concordance et indices de la tradition musulmane, Leiden 1936–69, s.vv. ‘jāhiliyya’ and ‘bay’a’ respectively, but note the avoidance of the word imam in these: the emphasis is on membership of the community rather than allegiance to a leader). Cf. also the dictum ‘it is not permitted to stay one night without an imam’, cited by Tyan, Sultanat, p. 304.
132 Jarir, p. 47410.
134 It should be clear from all this that we cannot agree with Nagel that the ‘surrogate institution of the imamate . . . only played a purely negative role for the Umayyad caliphate’ (Rechleitund, p. 50). Nor are we convinced that the concept of the ruler as deputy of God became more intense under ‘Abd al-Malik, as Rotter suggests (Bürgerkrieg, pp. 248ff.). But there is certainly more evidence for the Marwānids than there is for the Sufyānids, not least the poetry of Jarir and al-Farazdaq: no other poets, be they earlier or later, adherents of the Umayyads or others, succeeded in describing the caliphal ideal with the overpowering eloquence of those two.
or might not be the true representative of God; it was to choose one's *umma*. The fact that 'Alī and Mu'āwiya may well have had identical beliefs in no way means that contemporaries were faced with a purely political dilemma. There was only one true imam and one true *umma*, so that whoever made the wrong choice would find himself outside the community where no amount of religious observance would save him from a Jāhilī death. Choosing the right imam (or more precisely proving that the imam chosen was the right one) was a matter of vital importance for salvation; disputes over his identity thus precipitated the formation of sects, and declaration of belief in the legitimacy of one's own came to form part of the creed. 'Do you confess that Mu'āwiya is the caliph?\?', an Umayyad governor asked of a Khārijite, executing him on his refusal to answer in the affirmative.\(^{135}\) 'What do you say about Muṣ'ab?\?', Khārijites asked of al-Muhallab's troops, who declared him to be an imam of guidance; 'is he your leader (*wallī*) in this world and the next... are you his followers (*awliyā*) in life and death... what do you say about 'Abd al-Malik... are you quit of him in this world and the next... are you his enemies in life and death?'.\(^{136}\) al-Ḥajjāj professed that 'there is no god but God, who has no partner, that Muḥammad is His servant and messenger, and that he [al-Ḥajjāj] knew of no obedience except to al-Walīd b. 'Abd al-Malik; on this he would live, on this he would die, and on this he would be resurrected'.\(^{137}\) In the reign of al-Mahdī an 'Abbāsid *naqīb* died confessing that there is no god but God, that Islam is God's religion, that Muḥammad is the messenger of God, and that '‘Alī b. Abī Ṭālib is the legatee of the messenger of God, *ṣl*m, and the heir to the imamate after him'.\(^{138}\) An apostate who converted back to Islam in the time of al-Ma'mūn gave proof of his Muslim beliefs with the creed, 'I confess that there is no god but God, who has no partner, that the messiah is a servant of God, that Muḥammad spoke the truth, and that you are the Commander of the Faithful'.\(^{139}\) 'There is no religion except through you and no world except with you', as al-Ma'mūn was also told.\(^{140}\) The creed which Bughā, the Turkish slave soldier, had learnt consisted in declaration of belief in the unity of God, in the messengership of Muḥammad and in the kinship tie between the Prophet and the caliph on which


\(^{136}\) Tab., ser. ii, p. 821.


\(^{138}\) Tab., ser. iii, p. 532.

\(^{139}\) Tyan, *Califat*, pp. 455ff., citing the *Iqd*.

the latter's legitimacy had come to rest. The classical creeds which separate Sunnīs, Shī'ites and Khārijites of course also contain declarations of belief in the legitimacy of the caliph or caliphs acknowledged by the sects in question.

The fact that it was around the caliphate that Muslim sects crystallised is inexplicable on the assumption that the caliph was never more than a political leader; and given that the process of crystallisation began in the first civil war, there is no question of seeing Umayyad innovations here. If Abū Bakr conceived the caliphate as a purely political institution, it had changed character by the time of 'Uthmān, presumably in tandem with the adoption of the title khalīfat Allāh. But in fact this is a most implausible proposition. Just as khalīfat Allāh seems to have been the caliphal title from the start, so the caliphate must have been min al-īmān, 'part of the faith', from the moment of its inception.

142 Though for practical purposes this is what Tyan suggested (Califat, pp. 199ff.).
4

Caliphal law

If the deputy of God on earth was seen above all as a guide, what was the nature of his guidance? Obviously, in part it was political. The caliph was responsible for the maintenance of the community, the suppression of rebels, the conduct of *jihād*, and so forth; and the poets make no bones about the fact that guidance frequently took a militant form: where would people be, one of them asks, without the Marwānid ‘imam of guidance and beaters of skulls?’¹ The Umayyads and their governors were God’s swords,² and as such they were invincible: obviously, whoever had God on his side could not be defeated.³ But what we are concerned with here is their spiritual role, and what we wish to demonstrate is that it was seen as consisting above all in the definition and elaboration of God’s ordinances, or in other words in the definition and elaboration of Islamic law.

In his letter concerning the succession, al-Walīd II expressed the opinion that God had raised up caliphs for the implementation of His *ḥukm, sunna, ḥudūd, farā’id* and *huqīq*,⁴ a view which al-Ḥājjāj had apparently espoused before him.⁵ In the same vein Yazīd III stated that until the death of Hishām ‘the caliphs of God followed one another as guardians of His religion and judging in it according to His decree (*qādīna fīhi bi-ḥukmihi*),⁶ while Marwān II described

---

² Tab., ser. ii, p. 78 (of Ziyād b. Abīhi); al-‘Ajjāj, no. 29:140, p. 48 (Yazīd I); Farazdaq, vol. i, pp. 2657, 286a; vol. ii, pp. 58011, 6954 (Sulaymān, Bishr, Hishām and al-Ḥājjāj); Jarir, p. 506¹⁰ (the Umayyads in general); cf. also Aghānī, vol. xi, p. 307; vol. xxii, p. 330.
⁴ Below, appendix 2, p. 120.
⁶ Below, appendix 2, p. 126.
the caliphate as having been instituted for the implementation of God’s statutes (shara‘i’i’dinihi). We may begin by examining the ways in which they sought to fulfil this task.

Most obviously, they acted as judges. The caliphal office is explicitly associated with adjudication in the Qur’ān: in 38:25 God tells David that ‘we have appointed you khalīfa on earth, so judge among the people with truth’ (fa-‘hkum bayna ’l-nās bi’l-ḥaqq), and in 21:78ff. we see David in action as a judge together with Solomon. There are numerous references to these verses in poetry. ‘Judge (fa-‘hkum) and be just’, al-Āhwāṣ told Sulaymān with reference to the fact that he had been appointed by God.8 ‘He is the caliph, so accept what he judges for you in truth’ (mā qadā lakum bi’l-ḥaqq), Jarīr said,9 references to al-qadā’ bi’l-ḥaqq or ‘adl being commonplace.10 Without the caliph people would have no judgements (ahkām) established for them, as Jarīr says in the famous line quoted twice already.11 Elsewhere he adds that ‘the land rejoices in a ḥakam who maintains the ordinances (ṣāra‘i’d) for us’.12 And the caliphs are explicitly compared with David and Solomon: just as God ‘made Solomon to understand’ in the Qur’ān, so he gave understanding (fahhama) His caliph.13 The caliphs, or at least some of them, responded by dispensing justice in person, apparently with some solemnity: when ‘Abd al-Malik acted as qāḍī he would have a page recite poetry on legal justice before turning to the disputants.14 That the caliphs acted as qāḍīs was first pointed out by Tyan,15 and Tyan’s conclusion is confirmed by early Ḥadīth, in which they are frequently displayed in this role. Sometimes we see them give verdicts in concrete cases,16 and sometimes we are merely told that such and such

7 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1850.
9 Jarīr, p. 3904.
11 Jarīr, p. 3553.
12 Jarīr, p. 5064.
a caliph qadā bi-dhālika, adjudicated on the basis of such and such a rule. 17 Either way the Umayyads cast in this role are usually Mu'āwiya, Marwān I, 'Abd al-Malik and 'Umar II, though Yazīd II and Hishām also appear. 18 Marwān is however presented as governor of Medina rather than as caliph (as is 'Umar II on occasion too), and other caliphs fail to appear altogether. 18 Even so, the traditionists clearly agreed with the poets that adjudication was part of the caliphal role. In Umayyad times it was part of the role of the governor too. 20

The fact that the caliphs and their agents acted as judges is not in itself of great significance from the point of view of their role in the definition of the law. Hindu kings, for example, also acted as judges for all that they had no role in the formulation of dharma, the religious law elaborated by the brahmans; kings might or might not give verdict in accordance with dharma: either way royal orders had to be obeyed, and neither way did royal orders count as sacred law. 21 But caliphal verdicts did count as sacred law, as is clear from the very fact that they are to be found in Ḥadīth. Ḥadīth is a record of authoritative rulings, not of historical ones. Most of the rulings which Ḥadīth ascribes to the Umayyads may very well be unhistorical in the sense that the Umayyads were not in fact its authors. 22 What matters is that legal scholars wished to present them as such: at some point in history Umayyad adjudication was regarded as a source of authoritative decisions, with the result that Umayyad verdicts were collected and/or invented. If the Umayyads had not been regarded as a source of holy law, no verdicts attributed to them would have been found in Ḥadīth at all.

According to Ḥadīth, however, it was not only in connection with adjudication that the Umayyads formulated law. They are also said

18 In addition to the examples given in the preceding notes, see J. Schacht, The Origins of Muhammadan Jurisprudence, Oxford 1950, pp. 193ff.
19 Ibn Ḥazm implies that he has seen traditions involving all the Umayyad caliphs down to al-Walid II; but the passage is too polemical to be taken at face value (see the reference given below, note 36).
22 Cf. Crone, 'Jāhišī and Jewish Law', pp. 188f.
to have issued what in Roman terminology would be known as edicts or mandates to their governors and judges, laying down the legal rules which the latter were to apply. The best known example is the famous letter on fiscal and other legal matters addressed by ‘Umar II to his governors which Gibb misclassified as a rescript, but other examples survive. Thus Mu‘āwiyah sent instructions regarding stolen property to his governor in Medina; ‘Abd al-Malik wrote instructions, presumably to his governors, concerning slave-girls in whom defects are found after the sale; ‘Umar II is depicted as constantly despatching instructions on this or that aspect of the law to governors and judges in various places; Yazīd II wrote to the judge of Medina (and presumably judges elsewhere too), laying down that the testimony of stupid people should not be accepted; and Hishām sent instructions to an Egyptian qādi on points concerning dowries.

Conversely, governors and judges would write to the caliph for instruction on difficult legal points. Thus Muḥammad b. Yūsuf, governor of the Yemen, wrote to ‘Abd al-Malik asking for the correct procedure to be followed in a case of illicit intercourse. Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him for a ruling on a question of inheritance. When a difficult question relating to manumission by kitāba arose in Mecca, the governor of Medina (and Mecca) similarly wrote to ‘Abd al-Malik.

23 Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam, Sīra, pp. 93ff.; cf. H. A. R. Gibb, ‘The Fiscal Rescript of ‘Umar II’, Arabicca 2 (1955). In Roman law a rescript was the emperor’s answer to a question addressed to him which took the form of either epistula, a separate letter, or subscriptio, a reply written at the foot of the petition itself (F. Schulz, History of Roman Legal Science, Oxford 1963, p. 152). ‘Umar II’s letter was not an answer to anything. In Roman terminology it was an edict or mandate (cf. ibid., pp. 148ff., 154).


26 He instructs them on the treatment of non-Arab converts (al-Balādhurī, Futūḥ al-buldān, p. 426; Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam, Futūḥ Miṣr, ed. C. C. Torrey, New Haven 1922, p. 155; Ibn Sa‘d, Tabaqāt, vol. v, p. 384), a theme actually attested in the letter to which we may now refer as ‘Umar’s edict; on other fiscal questions (Ibn Sa‘d, Tabaqāt, vol. v, pp. 376, 380), on punishments (ibid., p. 385), on qasāma (see the references given in Crone, ‘Jāhilīj and Jewish Law’, note 167; though the sources refer to his kitāb in this context, the extant edict does not cover it), and on marriage law in relation to orphans (Kindī, Governors, p. 339, where the judge is named; ‘Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. vi, no. 10370, where he is anonymous; Ibn Abī Shayba, al-Muṣannaf, ed. ‘A.-Kh. Khān-āl-Afghānī, Hyderabad 1386–, vol. iv, pp. 140, 160, where he has completely disappeared, a good example of the way in which context tends to get lost in Ḥadīth).


28 Kindī, Governors, p. 348.


for advice. A governor of Ayla wrote to 'Umar II for rules concerning runaway slaves who steal, and an Egyptian judge wrote to the same caliph for elucidation on points relating to clientage, pre-emption and blood-money payable for broken fingers. A Syrian judge wrote to Hishām for advice on questions regarding inheritance and manumission. Judges and sub-governors might also seek advice from the top-governor of the area, who might solve the problem or write to the caliph for advice in his turn. Ibn Ḥazm even claims that 'whether the matter arose in Medina or elsewhere, neither governor nor judge would [ever] give judgement without referring it to the caliph in Syria, and neither would [ever] do more than carry out the latter’s instructions'. This is a polemical exaggeration, but clearly just an exaggeration, not an invention.

Even private persons would submit petitions concerning legal questions. According to early Ḥadīth, ‘a man went to 'Abd al-Malik to ask him about various things which he told me about. ‘Abd al-Malik showed the petition (kitāb) to Qabiṣa [b. Dhu’ayb al-Khuzā‘i, his secretary]. It said, “[what does one do to] a slave who slanders a free man?”. Qabiṣa said, “he is given eighty lashes.” Similarly, a certain Nāfi’ b. ‘Alqama is said to have written to ‘Abd al-Malik asking him about the permissibility of revoking wills in which manumissions have been made, and there are also examples involving ‘Umar II. (It is the caliphal replies to such petitions from governors and laymen which are rescripts in Roman terminology.) According to Ibn Ḥazm, the Mālikis were wrong to take pride in their much-vaunted ‘Medinese practice’: given that all disputes were referred to the caliph in the Umayyad period, it consisted of nothing


32 ‘Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. x, no. 18984.

33 Kindi, Governors, pp. 333f.

34 Waki‘, Qudāḥ, vol. iii, p. 205.

35 Cf. Waki‘, Qudāḥ, vol. ii, p. 21. For the total dependence of gādīs in the Umayyad period on the governors who appointed them, see ibid., vol. i, p. 141.


39 Ibn Abi Shayba, Muṣannaf, vol. iv, p. 75 (a man married a woman and consummated the marriage, whereupon he found a defect in her; so he wrote to ‘Umar II for advice).
but the decisions of 'Abd al-Malik, al-Walid I, Sulaymān, Yazīd II, Hishām and even al-Walid II, plus a little from 'Umar II whose reign was brief, as everyone could ascertain for himself from the Ḥadīth collections. 40 Nine hundred years later Schacht unwittingly followed Ibn Ḥazm's advice and arrived at the same conclusion: Umayyad legal practice was the starting point of Islamic law as it exists today. 41 Unlike Ibn Ḥazm, Schacht had his doubts about the authenticity of the decisions ascribed to the Umayyads, but this is of no importance here: what matters here is that early scholars automatically assumed law in the Umayyad period to have been caliphal law.

Caliphal law is not a notion familiar to the classical lawyers. In their opinion the first four caliphs were qualified to issue rulings on law because they were Companions, while 'Umar II was qualified to do so because he was an exceptionally pious caliph who cultivated Prophetic Ḥadīth, but no legal competence was vested in the caliphal office itself: in so far as caliphal rulings had any authority, they owed it to the same tradition from the Prophet which validated the rulings of the lawyers themselves. One is thus not surprised to find that there are traditions in which the Umayyad caliphs are described as drawing their opinions from the 'ulamā'. Far from being consulted by governors and judges, we are told, it was the caliphs who would write off for legal advice from judges and other legal scholars. Marwān, for example, wrote to Zayd b. Thābit for his opinion on a certain problem and, having obtained it, duly put it into effect. 42 'Abd al-Malik wrote to the qādi of Ḥimṣ asking him what the punishment for a homosexual should be. 43 Al-Walid I wrote to al-Ḥajjāj asking him to consult the local 'ulamā', and so forth. 44 Traditions in which caliphal rulings are validated with reference to precedents set by the 'ulamā' or by the Prophet himself are fairly common. 45 Indeed, there are even some in which Marwān I and 'Abd al-Malik are cast as

40 Above, note 28.
41 Schacht, Origins, pp. 190ff.
44 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. vii, no. 12325. Note also the tradition in which a case is brought to Marwān, the governor of Medina, but in which it is Ibn 'Abbās who enunciates the rule for which the tradition is cited; in the second version Marwān has dropped out altogether (ibid., vol. vi, nos. 10568f.).
afaqīhs, legal scholars, and/or as traditionists in their own right. But ultimately the fate of Umayyad rulings (other than those of 'Umar II) was to be rejected rather than retained on a Prophetic ticket. The Ḥijāzīs retained them longer than anyone else, and it is largely to them and their Egyptian pupils that we owe the traditions in which the Umayyads appear as formulators of law, though there is also some Syrian, Basran and even Kufan material. In classical law no caliphs other than the first four and 'Umar II play any role at all.

It is clear, however, that the classical point of view is the outcome of a reinterpretation. Originally all caliphs formulated law in their capacity as caliphs, as the Umayyads themselves explained, and it is also as caliphs that they are usually invoked in early Hadith. Caliphs of God or otherwise, the Umayyads are here seen as authorised to make religious law on a par with the Rāshidūn. Naturally, this point was beyond Ibn Ḥazm, who adduced his discovery that Medinese practice was based on caliphal decisions as a crushing argument against its validity: what are the decisions of mere caliphs against those of the scholars who are the true legatees of the Prophet? More surprisingly, it was also beyond Tyan and Schacht, both of whom concluded from their findings that law in Islam must once have been conceived as secular: how else could it have been made and dispensed by caliphs? Presumably Tyan would have changed his mind if

46 Thus Marwān I and 'Abd al-Malik both appear as traditionists in Ibn Sa'd, Tabaqāt, vol. v, pp. 43, 224, 226, where we are told that Marwān would consult the Companions and act in accordance with their agreement, while 'Abd al-Malik would sit with the fuqahā' and 'ulamā' of Medina and remember what they had said. Both similarly appear in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib al-tahdhib, Hyderabad 1325–7, the former in vol. x, pp. 91f., the latter in vol. vi, pp. 422f; according to Ibn Ḥajar and al-Fasawi, Kitāb al-mārifā wa'l-tarīkh, ed. A. D. al-'Umarī, Baghdad 1974–6, vol. i, p. 563, 'Abd al-Malik was reckoned among the four fuqahā' of Medina; and when somebody asked Ibn 'Umar who should be asked for legal opinions when the old men of Quraysh had died, he said that Marwān had a son who was a faqīh: 'ask him'. Both Muqāwiya and Marwān transmit traditions from the Prophet in 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. i, no. 411; vol. ix, no. 17087; vol. x, no. 18958.

47 It is because so much of this material is of Medinese origin that Ibn Ḥazm could use it to undermine the concept of Medinese practice. But 'Abd al-Razzāq owed over a quarter of his traditions on Umayyad rulings to the Meccan Ibn Jurayj, who had them not only from Medinese, but also from Meccan and occasionally other authorities (e.g. vol. vi, nos. 10568, 10633; vol. viii, no. 15489). The Egyptian material (preserved in al-Kindī and Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam) relates almost exclusively to 'Umar II.

48 Cf. 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. i, no. 1707 (Kufan); vol. vi, no. 11908 (Syrian); vol. vii, no. 15664 (Basra).

49 Tyan, Organisation judiciaire, vol. i, pp. 164ff. (early qādā' had no religious
he had reconsidered this conclusion in the light of his later work, for he proceeded to write a book in which he stressed the religious character of caliphal authority more strongly than any scholar to date. As for Schacht, he evidently had a strong sense that there was such a thing as caliphal law; yet in deference to the 'ulama' he almost invariably downgraded it to mere 'administrative practice', 'administrative regulations' and the like, thus casting the Umayyads as Sa'ūdī kings who can only make nizāms. But law in Islam was always regarded as God-given, and it is precisely in discussions of God-given law that the Umayyads are invoked in early Ḥadīth. What early Ḥadīth reflects, in other words, is a stage at which God-given law was formulated by God-given caliphs. This is clear in a number of ways.

First, there is no distinction in early Ḥadīth between caliphs who could formulate legal rules for the extrinsic reason that they were also Companions or exceptionally pious and later ones who had no right to interfere with the contents of the law at all. 'I have lived under 'Umar, 'Uthmān and the later caliphs', a Medinese successor says,
‘and they only beat a slave forty times for qadhf’.

This Medinese is using the same idiom as Yazid b. al-Muhallab, who spoke of ‘Umar, 'Uthman and later caliphs of God’, and what he is saying is that since no caliph had ever beaten a slave more than forty times for this particular crime, doing so would be contrary to Islamic law. The first caliphs have already acquired special sanctity in both his and Yazid b. al-Muhallab’s statements, but they are not contrasted with the Umayyads. What the Umayyads do is here seen as a continuation of patriarchal practice rather than as a deviation therefrom, precisely as it is in the work of a scholar as late as al-Awzā‘ī (d. 774). In Marwānid poetry, too, the first caliphs have acquired special sanctity without thereby undermining the validity of the acts of the Umayyads: Sulaymān acted in accordance with the sunna of the Fārūq, sc. 'Umar I, and modelled himself on 'Uthman; ‘Umar II’s sīra resembled that of his namesake; Hishām ‘brought the sunna of the two ‘Umars’; and the Umayyads in general followed the sunna of the rasūl. In poetry all the caliphs are a‘īmat al-hudā, mahdiyyūn and rāshidūn, and this is also the impression conveyed by early Ḥadīth. Unlike the court poets, the scholars soon ceased to accept this as true of contemporary caliphs: accepting the rulings of 'Abd al-Malik did not necessarily imply acceptance of Hishām as a source of law; it certainly did not imply acceptance of al-Manṣūr as one. And in due course the scholars ceased to invoke caliphs altogether, except for the first four and 'Umar II. But there is no simple way of explaining how the Umayyad caliphs came ever to be invoked unless we accept that legal authority once resided in the caliphal office itself.

Secondly, it is as specialists in caliphal law, not as bearers of a Prophetic tradition of their own, that the scholars appear in a number of these traditions. Thus when Mu‘āwiya writes to Zayd b. Thābit for advice, Zayd replies by adducing the decisions of ‘the two caliphs before you’, i.e. ‘Umar and 'Uthman. ’Is there a binding precedent

---

53 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. vii, no. 13793 (‘adraktu 'Umar wa-'Uthman wa-man ba'dahum (sic) min al-khulafa‘...). 54 Above, chapter 2, note 13.
61 Or more precisely the first three after Abī Bakr, cf. below, appendix 1, p. 112.
62 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. x, no. 19062; but note how the version cited by Mālik, Muwatta‘, vol. i, p. 333, downgrades caliphal authority: Zayd wrote back saying ‘God knows best! This is a problem on which only umarā‘, that is khulafa‘, have given verdicts; I have lived under the two caliphs before you, and they gave him [sc. the grandfather] half in the presence of a brother, a third in the presence
God's Caliph

*(sunna mādiya)* on this? 'Umar II asks of Sa'id b. al-Musayyab, who replies that 'Uthmān had once adjudicated in a dispute of this kind. Similarly, when 'Abd al-Malik is confronted with a problem relating to *kitāba*, Ma'bad al-Juhānī informs him that 'Umar and Mu'āwiya had adopted different rules on this point, Mu'āwiya's being the better. In all three traditions *sunna* is assumed to be caliphal, not Prophetic precedent, and it is as memorisers of such precedents that the scholars are taken into account. But the transition to the classical pattern is well illustrated in the tradition in which a scholar refuses to implement caliphal law on the ground that the Prophet had ruled something else.

Thirdly, it is clear that the caliphs were free to make and unmake *sunna* as they wished. 'We do not know of anyone who adjudicated on the basis of this rule before 'Abd al-Malik', a transmitter remarks without in any way wishing to depreciate the validity of the rule in question; in other words, it was valid because a caliph had made it, not because it went back to the Prophet or a companion. 'Abd al-Malik's rule continued to be applied by his successors, we are told, but when 'Umar II became caliph 'we feared that he would revoke it'. As it happens, he did not, but he clearly had the right. Even of a caliph as late as al-Mahdī we are told by way of compliment (in a non-legal work) that 'he made *sunan* not made by any caliph before him'. Once again the formulation of law appears as a prerogative of the head of state, in accordance with the claims of the Umayyads themselves.
Finally, it should be noted that the anti-caliph Ibn al-Zubayr also appears as a legal authority in early Ḥadīth, though on a far smaller scale than the Umayyads;⁶⁹ his aqdiya are referred to elsewhere too.⁷⁰ Whoever was accepted as caliph was thus taken by his followers to be a source of law regardless of whether he was an Umayyad or other Qurashi, a companion or a kinsman of the Prophet.

We should like to stress that the Umayyads concerned themselves with all aspects of the Shari'a, not merely with the law of war, fiscal and other public matters as Schacht believed to be the case.⁷¹ There is no sense in early Ḥadīth that the Umayyads should be invoked as authorities on public rather than private law; on the contrary, they regularly lay down rules regarding marriage, succession, manumission and the like. It is only when it comes to ritual law that they practically vanish from the material (with the exception of 'Umar II). But it seems unlikely that 'the imam of those who pray' should have left ritual law alone. There are in fact some traditions in which Mu'āwiya is invoked as an authority on prayer⁷² and fasting,⁷³ and there are several on 'Abd al-Malik's manner of performing the pilgrimage and prayer;⁷⁴ conversely, there are also traditions in which caliphs are instructed or corrected in matters of ritual by 'ulama'.⁷⁵ Besides, the non-legal literature condemns the Umayyads for having changed the prayer (not to mention the qibla), or in other words for having laid down a form of prayer which their subjects disliked.⁷⁶ The almost

⁶⁹ See for example 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. ix, nos. 16245–6.
⁷⁰ When 'Abd al-Malik's governor of Medina asked whether Ibn al-Zubayr's verdicts should be annulled, 'Abd al-Malik replied that they should not on the ground that he did not resent Ibn al-Zubayr's aqdiya, but rather his bid for power and that the annulment of aqdiya is hard to bear (Waki', Qudūth, vol. 1, p. 130; cf. also vol. ii, p. 404, where Ibn al-Zubayr writes to Abdallāh b. 'Utba, telling him how to adjudicate, and p. 321, where he objects to a verdict by Shurayh who nonetheless refuses to change it).
⁷¹ Schacht, Origins, p. 198 ('Abd al-Razzāq's Muṣannaf was not available when he wrote).
⁷³ 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. iv, no. 7850; contrast no. 7834, where he owes his dictum to the Prophet.
⁷⁴ Ibn Sa'd, Tabaqāt, vol. v, pp. 229f., 232f. Note also the Kufan tradition in which Marwān is invoked as an authority concerning the sanctity of mosques ('Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. i, no. 1707); he also appears as an authority on ritual law ibid., vol. iv, no. 8358, but as the editorial note explains, al-Bayhaqī's version presents Ibn 'Abbās as the authority rather than, as here, simply the transmitter of Marwān's view.
⁷⁵ 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. ii, nos. 2618, 2691. Note also the tradition, ibid., vol. iv, no. 8664, in which Marwān's role is limited to that of asking a scholar's opinion on a question of dietary law.
total absence of Umayyad caliphs from early Ḥadīth on ritual law is thus likely to mean that it was in this field that their legal competence was first rejected.

What then were the sources of caliphal law? According to poetry, they were kitāb, sunna and ra'y. The book was the Qurʾān, be it in its present form or otherwise; but sunna was not the sunna of the Prophet, let alone something documented in Ḥadīth, and ra'y was not the acumen of ordinary legal scholars.

As for sunna, it was good practice in general and that of prophets and caliphs in particular. Among the prophets David and Solomon have pride of place. 'David is justice, so judge by his sunna' (fa-ʾhkum bi-sunnatihi), Nābighat B. Shaybān told 'Abd al-Malik; 'you two have become among us like David and Solomon, following a sunna (alā sunnatīn) by which everyone who follows it is guided', al-Farazdaq told Ayyūb and his father, the caliph Sulaymān. But the Umayyads followed the sunna of the Prophet too, according to the same poet. Among the caliphs, 'Umar and 'Uthmān are prominent, as seen already, but so are later rulers. 'The family of Marwān acted sincerely towards God; they are the best, so act in accordance with their sunna', Nābighat B. Shayban told 'Abd al-Malik; Aʾshā of B. Rabīʿa told him much the same. 'Abd al-Malik was a caliph whose sunna should be imitated, according to Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyāt and the Umayyads in general had left behind 'ordinances (farāʾid) and a sunna worthy of recollection' according to al-Farazdaq, who

77 We are concerned with the formal rather than the substantive sources here. The question of the extent to which they borrowed from their non-Muslim subjects is discussed by P. Crone, Roman, Provincial and Islamic Law, forthcoming.

78 The Commander of the Faithful is defined as someone who 'applies the hadd and follows the book' in a poem addressed to al-Ḥajjāj (Jarir, p. 17, penult.), and al-Ḥajjāj himself is said to be qādīn biʾl-kitāb (Aḥāni, vol. xxii, p. 332). Jarir identifies the book as the Qurʾān in the line 'were it not for the caliph and the Qurʾān he recites ...' (Jarir, p. 355f.), and he also refers to the fact that God has revealed a faraḍa to the traveller and the poor in it (p. 415f.). For other references to the book in his diwān, see pp. 256f., 474f. For views on the shape of the Qurʾān about this time, see Wansbrough, Quranic Studies; Crone and Cook, Hagarism, pp. 17f.


80 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 308f.
81 Cf. above, p. 51.
82 Nābighat B. Shaybān, p. 108f.
84 Khalīfa yuqtadā bi-sunnatihi (Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyāt, no. 2:17).
also hoped that Sulaymān would ‘restore to us the sunan of the caliphs’.

It is clear from these passages that sunna was not envisaged as a set of concrete rules, but rather as a general example, an uswa hasana such as that set by the Prophet according to the Qurʾān. When the Umayyads are said to follow the sunna of David, the Prophet, the Fārūq or later caliphs, the message is that they acted in the spirit of these people, not that they knew of actual rulings from them, let alone rulings transmitted from them in Ḥadīth. This is not to deny that in practice the Umayyads paid close attention to the verdicts of their predecessors. Precedent tends to play a major role in the dispensation of law regardless of whether it is formally binding or not, even under modern conditions; and like most members of pre-industrial societies the Muslims took a conservative view of law. Thus a poet complimented ‘Abd al-Malik on not having reversed any of his predecessors’ verdicts, having chosen rather to imitate their action; and in the line by al-Farazdaq just quoted, legal reform is characteristically envisaged as legal restoration. But the concept of sunna was not in itself an obstacle to legal innovation. Thus we are told that ‘Umar II’s sīra resembled that of ‘Umar I, ‘who instituted ordinances and whom the nations took as their example’, the implication being that ‘Umar II also instituted laws. As has been seen, caliphal sunna appears as something capable of change in early Ḥadīth too.

87 Farazdaq, vol. 1, p. 3297.
89 This is obvious when they are said to have followed the sunna of remote figures such as David and Solomon, but sunna is also translatable as general example even when concrete precedent is referred to. Thus Aʿshā of B. Rabīʾa encouraged ‘Abd al-Malik to designate his son al-Walīd as successor at the expense of his brother ‘Abd al-ʿAzīz, saying that a son has the best claim to the mulk of his father and that ‘Abd al-Malik had himself inherited his power from ‘Uthmān, Ibn ʿArab and Marwān: fa-ʾish ḥamid wa-mil bi-sunnathihi (above, note 84): yet, though succession had been dynastic since ‘Uthmān, it had not always been from father to son. Similarly Marwān thought that Muʿāwiya’s designation of Yaʿzūd as his heir was in accordance with the sunna hādiya mahdiyya of Abū Bakr (who had designated ‘Umar as his successor), though the Medinese did not share that view on the ground that Abū Bakr had not designated a member of his own family (Iqd, vol. iv, p. 371).
90 Aghānī, vol. iv, p. 4221.
91 Ashbahāta min ‘Umar al-Fārūq sīratahu sunna ‘l-farāʾid wa-tammat bihi ‘l-umam (Jaʿrīr, p. 5111). Note also the fluidity of the concept of sunna in the claims made by al-Farazdaq on behalf of Sulaymān: he acted in accordance with the sunna of the Fārūq, but he also modelled himself on ʿUthmān, and he was expected to restore the sunan of the caliphs of Fihr, the Umayyads in general having left behind them a sunna worthy of recollection.
As regards the *ra'y* of which the caliphs were possessed, it was a superhuman insight (ra'y *yaṣīqu ra'y al-rijaḥ*), as we are told with reference to Yazīd II,93 who is also described as an *imām* *huda* *qad saddada lāḥ* *ra'yahu*.93 Elsewhere it is a super-human understanding: as mentioned already, the caliphs were *mufahhamūn*, made to understand by God on a par with Solomon, 'the rightly-guided king' (*al-malik al-mahdi*).94 It is with reference to this notion that a ruling of Mu'āwiya's is deemed better than 'Umar's in an early tradition.95 Indeed, al-Ḥajjāj held 'Abd al-Malik to be divinely protected against idle talk and behaviour slips (*mašūm min ḥaṭal al-qawl wa-zalal al-fīl*);96 and all the caliphs were rightly guided (*mahdiyyūn*), as has been been seen. In short, the ultimate source of caliphal law was divine inspiration: being the deputy of God on earth, the caliph was deemed to dispense the guidance of God Himself.

The convergence of the evidence of court poetry and early Ḥadīth is of crucial importance in that it puts paid to the idea that the Umayyad conception of the caliphal office was peculiar to the Umayyads themselves. Naturally the caliphs had a special interest in promoting it, and the poets who broadcast their views were certainly sycophantic. But the sycophantic element of court poetry lies in its denial of a discrepancy between ideal and reality, not in the presentation of the ideal itself. In practice the behaviour of the Umayyads may at times have been comparable with that of the Borgia popes; but if a poet flattered the Borgia popes on their power to bind and loose in heaven and on earth, he would still be making a correct statement about the attributes of the papal office, whereas a historian who tried to reconstruct the nature of this office with reference to the behaviour of its incumbents would go badly astray. Similarly in the case of the Umayyads. What the poets described was

92 Nābighat B. Shaybān, p. 6818.
93 Kuthayyir, p. 34218. The line is also said to have been addressed to 'Abd al-Malik.
94 Above, note 13. It is al-Farazdaq who describes Solomon as a rightly guided king.
95 'Abd al-Razzāq, *Muṣannaf*, vol. viii, no. 15664. When asked why he prefers Mu'āwiya's rule to 'Umar's, Ma'bad replies *l'anna Da'ūd kāna khayr* min Sulaymān *fa-limā fahimahā* (var. *fa-fahimahā*) Sulaymān. This is clearly corrupt. The allusion is to Qur'ān, 21:78–9, 'and David and Solomon, when they gave judgement concerning the tillage. . . we made Solomon to understand it (*fa-fahhamnāhā Sulaymān*) and unto each we gave judgement and knowledge'. The gist of Ma'bad's reply must thus have been that although David was better than Solomon, it was Solomon that God made to understand. (for variants on this tradition, see J. van Ess, 'Ma'bad al-Gūhani', in *Islamwissenschaftliche Abhandlungen Fritz Meier*, ed. R. Gramlich, Wiesbaden 1974, pp. 55f.)
the generally accepted concept of the caliphal office, not one invented by the Umayyads in the face of staunch opposition thereto on the part of their subjects, as one tends automatically to assume under the influence of classical notions; on the contrary, even the ‘ulamā‘, the future rivals of the caliphs, took this concept as their starting point.

Whether the Umayyads themselves were generally accepted is an altogether different question. Obviously, a great many of their subjects found them hard to bear, and as an antidote to the flattery of the poets we offer a translation of part of the famous speech by Abū Ḥamza al-Khārijī in which the so-called deputies of God come across as anything but rightly guided. The Khārijites were however unique in that they rejected not only the Umayyads themselves, but also the caliphal office which they represented. Lā hukmā illā līllāh, as their slogan said: God might have given judgement to David and Solomon, but he had not given any to his khalīfa. For those who were to become the Sunnī majority, however, the illegitimacy of the Umayyads did not necessarily invalidate the caliphal ideal. Clearly it contributed thereto, and the erosion of the caliphal ideal at the hands of the scholars must have begun in the Umayyad period (one suspects that al-Walid II’s letter had an outmoded ring to it already at the time of its publication); but it was only under the ‘Abbāsids that the process was completed, leaving the Imāmīs as the sole adherents of the original conception. It is to this process of erosion that we shall devote ourselves in the following chapters.

97 Cf. below, appendix 3.
98 Cf. Qur., 21:79; Crone and Cook, Hagarism, p. 27.
Originally, *sunna* was that established way of doing things which the Romans called *mos majorum*, ancestral custom. Classically, it is Muḥammad’s way of doing things as attested in traditions going back to him, supplemented by traditions going back to his Companions (including such early caliphs as the sect in question recognises), who are assumed to have perpetuated Muḥammad’s practice. In its classical form, the concept of *sunna* undermines caliphal authority in three ways. First, the exponents of Prophetic *sunna* are scholars, not caliphs: the caliph has no say in its transmission or interpretation except in so far as he is a scholar himself. Secondly, Prophetic *sunna* takes the form of a host of concrete rules: having lost his capacity to make his own *sunna*, the caliph cannot simply treat that of the Prophet as a general example in the spirit of which he should act. And thirdly, the *sunna* of the Prophet is resistant to reinterpretation: the outlook of the scholars is averse to allegory; and since they owe their authority to knowledge of the Prophet’s rules, they are not qualified to reinterpret or explain away these rules, be it on behalf of the caliph or others. To this may be added that the rules themselves are not particularly conducive to caliphal designs, having been made by scholars in, on the whole, competition with caliphs; but whatever their contents, their formulation deprives the caliph of any say, *qua* caliph, in the definition of Islamic norms.

According to the scholars, the classical concept of *sunna* was born in the lifetime of the Prophet himself: sincere Muslims wished to model their conduct on that of the Prophet from the start. If this claim is accepted, the Umayyad concept of the caliphate must have been an un-Islamic deviation which was never accepted by the community at large, and this is indeed how it is often presented; but it should be clear by now that this cannot be correct. Certainly, there is every reason to believe that Muḥammad’s followers regarded their
leader as a source of right practice and spoke of his *sunna* as something worthy of imitation; but this is by no means to say that the classical concept of *sunna* was born in those days. In pre-Islamic Arabia every person endowed with a modicum of authority was a potential source of normative practice within his own family, tribe or wider circle of contacts; why should Muhammad have been an exception? But in classical theory Muhammad is the *only* source of such practice. On the one hand, his precedent overrides all rival ways of doing things, binds every member of the community and covers every aspect of life; on the other hand, it is properly documented, so that everyone can study and refer to it, as opposed to loosely equating it with whatever is perceived to be right at any given time: extra-prophetic authority is thus effectively ruled out. It is this feature which gives the classical concept its unique strength, and it is in this sense that it must be the product of an evolution, as most Islamicists would now agree. What we wish to do here is to examine the major phases of this evolution from the point of view of its effect on the authority vested in the caliphate.

The Umayyads

In the Umayyad period the expression 'sunna of the Prophet' is most frequently encountered in the collocation *kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyīhi*, a collocation which in its turn is most frequently encountered in the context of revolt. The sources present every major revolt

1 Cf. Bravmann, *Spiritual Background*, pp. 139ff., where it is persuasively argued that *sunna* were invariably regarded as going back to specific persons in pre-Islamic times though the persons in question were not always remembered. For one who instituted a *sunna* within his family, see p. 152, where an Umayyad nobleman says that his father *sanna* twenty thousand dinars for his womenfolk, or in other words established this as the dower to which they were entitled by his *sunna*; for another who hoped to establish a good example generally, see p. 160, where the pre-Islamic poet al-Mutalammis would like to leave behind 'a *sunna* which will be imitated'.

2 By way of contrast, note the famous story in which the members of the *shūrā* ask 'Ali and 'Uthmān whether they will undertake to follow the Qurān, the *sunna* of the Prophet and the *sira* of the first two caliphs. Whatever the truth of this, it is clearly in their capacity as potential rulers that 'Ali and 'Uthmān are being asked this question: the electors wish to make sure that things will continue more or less as before. There is no sense here that the *sunna* of the Prophet (or for that matter that of the *shaykhayn*) is something which every believer undertakes to observe in every aspect of his life (cf. Bravmann, *Spiritual Background*, pp. 123ff., where the episode is discussed and full references given).

God's Caliph

from the time of 'Uthmān until the fall of the Umayyads as having invoked a call to, or an oath of allegiance on, 'the book of God and the sunna of His Prophet'. On the Shi'ite side the examples include 'Āli at Siffin in 37/657,4 al-Ḥusayn in his attempt to gain the support of Basran ashrāf in 60/680,5 the tawwābūn in Iraq and the Jazīra in 64/684,6 al-Mukhtar in Iraq in the mid-60s/680s,7 Zayd b. 'Āli at Kufa in 121/738,8 and the missionaries of the 'Abbāsids in Khurāsān.9 On the Khārijite side they include al-Mustawrid b. 'Ullafa in Iraq in 43/663,10 Suwayd b. Sulaym in the Jazīra in 77/696,11 and 'Abdallah b. Yahyā and Abū Ḥamza in the Yemen and the Hijāz in 129–30/746–7.12 Among rebels of other colours we find the provincial opponents of 'Uthmān,13 the followers of

4 Tab., ser. i, p. 3279.
5 Tab., ser. ii, p. 240: wa-anā ad'-ākum ilā kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihī ʿīl'ma-inna 'l-sunna qad umūtāt wa-inna 'l-bid'a qad ukhyyiyat.
6 Tab., ser. ii, p. 508: innā naḍ'ākum ilā kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihī wa'l-ṭalāb bi-dīmā'āhī bāyātīhi wa-lī jihād al-muḥīlīn wa-l-mārīqīn.
12 One of Abī Iljamza's commanders similarly called a Syrian general to al-kitab wa-l-sunna (Aghānī, vol. XXIII, p. 245), or to al-sunna wa-l-ṭālīb bi-kitāb [Allāh] (Bal., Ans. (MS), vol. ii, fol. 190b).
Ibn al-Zubayr in 64/683, Mu'tarrif b. al-Mughira in Iraq and the Jibāl in 77/696f., Ibn al-Ash'ath in Sistān and Iraq in the early eighties/about 700, Yazīd b. al-Muhallab in Iraq in 101–2/719–20f., al-Hārith b. Surayj at Balkh in 116/734f. and later, as well as his followers at Āmul in 117/735f. and other separatists in Khurāsān in 128/745f. We do not wish to defend the authenticity of every single attestation, the very early ones being particularly suspect, but that it was customary for rebels of the Umayyad period to make a call to the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet would be hard to deny; clearly, it was customary for them to do so whatever their sectarian stance.

What did such a call signify? Given that it was used by rebels of the most diverse persuasions, it can hardly have signified very much in concrete terms. This is confirmed by the so-called letter of Ibn Ibād to the caliph 'Abd al-Malik, which is more probably a letter by Jābir b. Zayd to another 'Abd al-Malik, perhaps a Muhallabid, and to another 'Abd al-Malik, perhaps a Muhallabid, perhaps a Muhallabid; 14 Bal., Ans., vol. iv/b, p. 58; vol. v, p. 188: bāyā'ahu 'alā kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihi wa-ṣirat al-khulafa' al-sāliḥin. Earlier, we are told, Ibn al-Zubayr had called to al-ridā wa'l-shurā (vol. v, p. 188).

15 Tab., ser. ii, p. 993: inā nada'ukum ilā kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihi wa-ilā jihād man 'anida 'an al-ḥaqq wa'sta'ihara bi'l-fay' wa-taraaka ḥukm al-kitāb. Cf. also p. 984.


17 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1398: tubāyī′una 'alā kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihi ši' wa-alā an lā tata' al-junūd bilādana wa-lā baydatana wa-lā yyād 'alaynā sīrat al-fāsiq al-Ḥajjāj. Cf. also pp. 1391, 1392; and Aghānnī, vol. x, p. 43.


19 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1583.

20 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1931.

21 Cf. M. Cook, Early Muslim Dogma, Cambridge 1981, pp. 57ff. Cook's proposition that the letter was addressed to 'Abd al-Malik b. al-Muhallab receives some support from the fact that the letter, in enumerating the misdeeds of 'Uthmān, mentions that he prevented the people of al-Bahrāyin and 'Ummān from selling their mīra until that of the imāra had been sold (Hinds Xerox (on which, see Cook, Dogma, p. 4), p. 388; al-Iṣkāwī, Kashf al-ghumma al-jāmi'i li-akhbār al-umma, Zāhiriyya MS, Ta'rīkh, no. 346, p. 301; al-Barrādī, Kitāb al-Jawāḥir, Cairo 1302, p. 160 = R. Rubinacci (tr.), 'Il califfo 'Abd al-Malik e gli Ibaditi', Annali dell'Istituto Universitario Orientale di Napoli NS 5 (1953), p. 112). This might reasonably have been expected to make some impression on a Muhallabic conscious of his 'Ummān origins and connections. It was not however, from Kirmān that 'Abd al-Malik was dismissed in 86 (as conjectured by Cook, Dogma, p. 63, with reference to Tab., ser. ii, p. 1182). According to Khalīfa, Ta'rīkh, p. 410, he had been in charge of the Basran shurṭa under al-Ḥajjāj, a point confirmed by al-Farazdaq (cf. H. Lammens, 'Le chantre des Omiades', Journal Asiatique sér. IX, 4 (1894), p. 172); differently put, he had served as the deputy of al-Ḥakam b. Ayyūb, al-Ḥajjāj's governor of Basra for most of the time between 75 and 86.
according to which the call signified that the person who made it was angry on God’s behalf, God having been disobeyed. Kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabīyyihi was thus an oppositional slogan on a par with al-amr bi’l-ma’ruf wa’l-nahy ‘an al-munkar, and what it said was no more and no less than that the rebel disagreed with governmental practice, believing himself to have a better idea of what right practice was.

This explains why it is that the Umayyads and their governors only made use of the collocation in efforts to make rebels return to the fold, or in other words in attempts to persuade them that right practice was to be found with the caliphs after all. Thus, we are told, al-Mughīra b. Shu’ba used to preach to the philo-‘Alid Ḥujr and his followers that ‘Uthmān had followed the book of God and the sunna of His Prophet. ‘Abd al-Malik called Ibn al-Ashtar to God (sic) and the sunna of His Prophet before defeating the Zubayrids. al-Ḥajjāj reputedly wrote to the Kharijite Qatārī b. al-Fuja’a that ‘you have opposed the book of God and deviated from the sunna of His Prophet’. ‘Umar II instructed his governor of Iraq to call the Ḥarūriyya to al-amal bi-kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabīyyihi. And adherents of the anti-caliph Ibn al-Zubayr similarly called al-Mukhtar and his followers to kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat rasūl Allāh before defeating them. With the possible exception of ‘Umar II (to whom we shall return), the Umayyads did not normally make use of the collocation, not even in statements designed to present their policies in the most appealing of lights. Things duly changed, however when

(Bal., Ans., vol. iv/a, p. 59). It was undoubtedly from this office that he was dismissed, according to al-Ṭabarī, in 86. The fact that ‘Abd al-Malik held office in the headquarters of the Ibāḍīs in the period 75–86 might be taken to suggest that the epistle was composed during these years (rather than in the next period of Muhallabid ascendancy from 96 to 99).

22 He who becomes angry on God’s behalf when He is disobeyed, and is content with God’s ĥukm, and calls to kitāb Allāh wa-ilā sunna nabīyyihi wa-sunnat al-mu’minin bādahu, does not go to excess, as al-Barrādī’s version has it (Jawāhir, p. 164 = Rubinacci, ‘Il califfo’, p. 118; garbled in al-Izkawi, Kashf, p. 304; missing from the Hinds Xerox, where the version given is incomplete).

23 Tab., ser. ii, p. 113.

24 Tab., ser. ii, p. 743.

25 Șafwat, Rasūl, vol. ii, p. 177 (citing al-Mubarrad, al-Kāmil). The version given by al-Jāḥiz (ibid., pp. 180f.) makes no reference to this. In neither version is the point picked up in Qatārī’s reply.


28 We do not know what Morony has in mind when he states that in the aftermath of the second civil war the Umayyads tried to increase their religious authority by claiming to rule in accordance with the Qur’ān and sunna (Iraq, p. 480).
an Umayyad rebel acceded to the throne. Like other dissidents, Yazid III began by calling his followers to the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet, spelling out by way of concrete information that succession (al-amr) should be decided by consultation (shurā). Having done so, he also made use of the collocation in his accession speech: ‘I have rebelled in anger on behalf of God, His Messenger and His religion, calling to God, to His book and to the sunna of His Prophet (ṣl)’ at a time when the waymarks of guidance have been pulled down and the light of the people of godliness has been extinguished. He wrote to the people of Iraq promising them that he would act in accordance with the command of God and the sunna of His Prophet, following the way of the best of their people in past times. And in his letter of amān to al-Ḥārith b. Surayj he similarly stated that ‘we became angry on God’s behalf when His hudūd were suspended and His servants suffered all sorts of things, when blood was shed where it was not lawful and property was taken without right; so we wished to act in this community in accordance with the book of God, exalted and mighty is He, and the sunna of His Prophet’. In short, Yazid III assured his subjects that he had not rebelled for personal reasons, but rather because God’s law had been violated, something which he now promised to put right.

Plainly, the rebels who called to kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihi did not equate sunna with the example of the Prophet as attested in Ḥadīth. Leaving aside the fact that some of them may have been Qu‘ānic fundamentalists, they never adduced examples set by the Prophet which the Umayyads were supposed to have ignored and which they themselves now promised to observe. Instead, they

29 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1804; Bal., Ans. (MS), vol. ii, fol. 167a.
30 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1834; Bal., Ans. (MS), vol. ii, fol. 169b; Ṭqd, vol. iv, pp. 95f.
31 Below, appendix 2, p. 128.
32 Tab., ser. ii, pp. 1867f.
33 Note that Ibn al-Zubayr also claimed to have rebelled ghadabun li’llāh, with special reference to the Umayyad handling of fay (Aghānī, vol. 1, p. 22); and ‘Umar II sought to pre-empt the ghadab of the Khārijite Shawdhah when he wrote, ‘it has come to my attention that you have rebelled ghadabun li’llāh wa-li-nabiyyihi, but you have no better right to do that than I do’ (Tab., ser. ii, p. 1348).
specified grievances such as the Umayyad manner of distributing revenues, the stationing of Syrian troops in Iraq, the keeping of troops too long in the field, maltreatment of the Prophet's family, tyranny and the like. It was by these acts that the Umayyads had violated God's book and the sunna of his Prophet, or, as the rebels paraphrased it, suspended the ḥudūd and rendered the sunna dead; and no attempt whatever was made to prove that the Prophet had acted otherwise. To the rebels sunna thus meant much the same as it did to the Umayyads, that is venerable and acceptable practice—practice acceptable to them. The Umayyads saw caliphal practice as identical with that of the Prophet for the simple reason that they approved of their own acts, while their opponents conversely saw it as opposed to that of the Prophet for the simple reason that they disliked Umayyad policies. To say that someone had followed the sunna of the Prophet was to say that he was a good man, not to specify what he had done in concrete terms. Contrariwise, when people complained that a governor had acted bi-ghayr al-sunna, they simply meant that he had behaved in a fashion unacceptable to them. In concrete terms, the 'sunna of the Prophet' meant nothing.

There are incidents in the revolts of Yazīd b. al-Muhallab and al-Ḥārith b. Surayj in which this comes across with particular clarity. Thus a participant in the revolt of Yazīd stated that 'we have called them [sc. the Umayyads] to the book of God and the sunna of His Prophet Mūhammad, may God bless him, and they claim that they

35 Cf. above, notes 5, 8–10, 29.
36 Thus Yazīd b. al-Muhallab, above, note 12.
37 Thus Zayd b. 'Alī, above, note 5.
38 Cf. above, notes 3–5.
39 Cf. notes 5 (mażālim), 8 (jabariyya), 12 (the behaviour of al-Ḥajjāj).
40 Cf. notes 2, 5, 8, 28.
41 Thus Abū Bakr had followed the sunna of the Prophet, while 'Umar had acted in accordance with the book of God and revived the sunna of the Prophet in the opinion of the Khārijītes (Tab., ser. ii, p. 883); by contrast, 'Uthmān and 'Alī had innovated and abandoned Qur'ānic ḥukm (above, note 7). Past rulers had followed the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet according to Zayd b. 'Alī, but they had stopped doing so, and it was for this reason that he wished to revolt (ibid., p. 1700). Similarly, a good practice such as that of electing the best Muslim ruler without reference to his tribal status was ra'y rashīd fa-qad maqad bihi al-sunna ba'da al-rasūl according to the Khārijītes (ibid., p. 985). To their opponents, of course, it was neither ra'y rashīd nor sunna. Whatever one liked could be sunna even if nobody practised it: innahā sunna walakinna darasat (Waki', Qudāh, vol. iii, p. 71; cf. also Abū Dhū'ayb in Aghānī, vol. vi, p. 277*).
42 Cf. 'IQD, vol. ii, p. 80*, with reference to al-Ḥajjāj's governorship of the Haramayn; of Marwān in Medina it was similarly said that he lā yaqdi bi-sunna (ibid., p. 110; Qalqashandi, Subh, vol. 1, p. 259).
have accepted it from us’, meaning that it would be unwise to initiate further hostilities; but Yazīd replied, ‘do you really believe that the Umayyads will act in accordance with the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet? They have destroyed that (qad ḍayya’ū ḍhālīka) ever since they came into existence’. It is plain that this interchange was not about the Umayyad attitude to Qurʾān and sunna but rather about the rebels’ chances of having their concrete demands accepted, Yazīd b. al-Muhallab’s point being that the alleged Umayyad willingness to negotiate should not be trusted. Similarly, when ‘Āṣim b. ‘Umayr, the governor of Khurāsān, agreed with al-Ḥārith b. Surayj to ask Hishām for the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet and to rebel if the response was negative, the issue was not Qurʾān and Ḥadith, but rather Hishām’s choice of personnel: ‘I am only asking for the book of God, exalted and mighty is He, and conduct in accordance with the sunna, and the employment of people of merit and excellence’, al-Ḥārith later explained to Naṣr b. Sayyār. In the governorship of the latter, al-Ḥārith had some sort of manifesto read aloud in the streets and he made it clear that the governor of Khurāsān ought in his view to be chosen by local men, i.e. by a shūrā. Naṣr refused to step down, but a shūrā for the election of sub-governors did in fact take place. Naṣr and al-Ḥārith nominated two men each, instructing them to nominate candidates of their own ‘who would act in accordance with the book of God’, and to draw up such sunan and siyar as the candidates in question should follow. To al-Ḥārith and his followers, the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet thus stood for local control of local government. To other rebels in other areas, it stood for something else again.

43 Tab., ser. ii, pp. 1399ff.
44 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1577.
45 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1889.
46 Tab., ser. ii, pp. 1918, 1920. It was a kitāb sayyara fīhi sīrat al-Ḥārith.
48 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1918; compare p. 1931, where al-Ḥārith once more calls for the amr to be shūrā and it is al-Kirmānī who refuses.
49 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1918. Al-Ḥārith’s candidates are unidentifiable, but Naṣr chose Muqāṭīl b. Sulaymān, the exegete, and Muqāṭīl b. Ḥayyān [al-Nabāṭ], the son of a distinguished mawla who had become a mawla muwālāt of the exegete. Compare below, appendix 2, p. 127 and note 85 thereto, where Yazīd III envisages a shūrā as consisting of fuqahā’ al-mustimīn wa-sulahā’ ʿumum.
50 Cf. Tab., ser. ii, p. 1583, where al-Ḥārith’s followers at Amul surrender, asking for the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet plus immunity for the towns
In short, the collocation of book and *sunna* stood for justice, whatever justice was perceived to be in each particular case. Al-Ḥārith b. Surayj paraphrased his demand for the book of God and conduct in accordance with the *sunna* as one for *al-giyām bi'l-'adl wa'l-*sunna*, telling Naṣr that it was now thirteen years since he had left Marw *inkārān li'l-jawr*, 'in protest against tyranny'.

‘We only fought for you in search of justice (†a{laba'l-*adl)’, erstwhile followers of his explained when they seceded from him, making their own call to the book and the *sunna*, ‘we are the righteous party (al-fi’al-*ādila) calling to the truth’. *Sunna* in the sense of right and just practice might well be documented with reference to the past. Yazīd b. al-Muḥallab called not only to the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet, but also to the *sunna* of the two ‘Umars. A Khārījite prisoner taken by al-Ḥaḍjāj objected to al-Ḥaḍjāj’s execution of prisoners and defined the *sunna* on this point by reference to the book of God and pre-Islamic poetry. The *sunna* by which Marwān tried to justify Mu‘āwiya’s designation of Yazīd I as his successor was the precedent set by Abū Bakr. And a clever poet invoked the precedent of the prophet himself to ‘Omar II, informing this notoriously stingy caliph that the Prophet used to reward the poets who praised him. But in all these examples the reference is to the past as generally remembered and approved, not to a special record of Prophetic (or for that matter other) precedent transmitted with particular care on account of its particular authority. Whether pre-Islamic poetry, the Prophet or later figures are invoked, *sunna* refers to all those norms which a person comes to regard as binding through interaction with his social peers and for which he will only seek support in the past if the norms in question are violated, not to a code absorbed through a study of past models to which reference will constantly be made as a matter of course. It was people’s notions which had participated in the revolt; both requests were granted them, whereupon a relative of Masqala b. Hubayra was appointed governor. An appointment of this kind was presumably among the things they had fought for: one of the leaders of the revolt was a mawlā of Ḥayyān al-Nabaṭī, a mawlā of Masqala b. Hubayra (ibid., p. 1582).

51 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1890. Note also the association of *kitāb* and *sunna* with *radd al-maʿzālim*, above, note 8.
52 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1931.
53 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1392.
54 *Iqd*, vol. ii, p. 174. A knowledge of poetry and *ayyām al-*ʿarab was apparently appreciated in *qaḍīs*, cf. below, note 87.
55 Above, chapter 4, note 89.
56 *Iqd*, vol. ii, p. 92'; compare *Aghānī*, vol. iv, p. 276, where the Prophet is invoked to al-Walīd I.
of propriety and justice which determined what was *sunna*, not the other way round; and appeals to the *sunna*, or to the book and *sunna*, or to the book on its own, or simply to God, were so many appeals to these notions, whatever they were at any given time.

It is because the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet stood for whatever was perceived to be right and proper in any given case that an oath of allegiance involving this collocation was a conditional one: allegiance was pledged as long as propriety and justice were observed. When Muslim b. 'Uqba reconquered Medina for Yazid I, he executed two Medinese for their determination to swear allegiance on the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet, as opposed to on the understanding that they were slaves whose lives and property were at the discretion of the caliph. Ibn 'Umar is said to have paid written allegiance to 'Abd al-Malik on the *sunna* of God and the *sunna* of his Prophet. But al-Mukhtar, who had called for the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet in confrontation with the

57 'Abd al-Malik called Ibn al-Ashtar to God and the *sunna* of His Prophet, which may be a scribal mistake (above, note 24); but the Azd of Khurṣān gave *bay'a* to 'Abd al-Malik b. Harmala *'alā kitāb Allāh 'azza wa-ja'la* (Tab. ser. ii, p. 1862); al-Kirmānī protested that he only wanted 'the book of God' when he took Marw (ibid., p. 1930); and Qaṭaba, advancing against the Syrian troops at Isfahān, fixed a *muṣḥaf* on a spear and called the enemy to *ma fī hādhā 'l-muṣḥaf* (ibid., ser. iii, p. 5). Note also how *kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihī* in al-Barrādi's version of Jābir's letter to a certain 'Abd al-Malik twice figures as *kitāb Allāh/kitāb rabbīhim* only in al-Izkāwi's rendition (Barrādi, *Jawahir*, pp. 165f.; al-Izkāwi, *Kashf*, p. 305).

58 'By what book or by what *sunna* do you consider my love of them [sc. the Hāšumītes] dishonourable for me?', as Kumayt rhetorically asked (al-Kumayt, *Die Hāšumijīt*, ed. and tr. J. Horovitz, Leiden 1904, p. 32 = 27; no. 2: 13), meaning that there was no reason why it should be dishonourable at all. 'I do not know in what book of God they find this *rizq* and *'ala*', Mu'āwiya is reported to have said, meaning that the rights which his subjects claimed in respect of them could be ignored (Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, *Futūḥ Mīṣr wa-akhbārūhā*, p. 101).


60 *Iqd*, vol. iv, p. 400; al-Bukhārī, *Le recueil des traditions mahométaines*, ed. L. Krehl and T. W. Juynboll, Leiden 1862–1908, vol. iv, p. 402; Qalqashandī, *Ṣubh*, vol. vi, p. 480 (has the more traditional *kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihī*); Ibn 'Asākir, *Tahdhib*, vol. vi, p. 52 (mentions the written form); Thomson, 'Early Sects', p. 91 (misses the exceptional nature of this oath). For another oath on the *sunna* rather than the book of God, see Ibn 'Asākir, *Tahdhib*, vol. v, p. 424: after the death of 'Ali, Ziyād secured from Mu'āwiya an *amān* for himself and for Ḥujr b. 'Adī and his companions, at which they swore allegiance 'on the *sunna* of God, the *sunna* of His messenger, and action in obedience to Him'.
Umayyads, contempitiously refused a compact with Ibn al-Zubayr on the basis of book and *sunna*: 'you can go and make a compact with my worst slave-boy on that', he said, spelling out an alternative *bay'a* designed to give him a far greater say in Ibn al-Zubayr's affairs: the 'run-of-the-mill compact' (*al-mubāya'a al-'īmma*) did not suffice in this case. Conversely, an undertaking to rule in accordance with the book and the *sunna* amounted to a renunciation of absolutism. Having explained, in his accession speech, that he had rebelled in anger on God's behalf, calling to the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet, Yazid III proceeded to state that he would engage in no building works, squander no money on wives and children, transfer no money from one province to another except in a limited way and with good reason, keep no troops in the field too long, destroy nobody's income by overtaxing *dhimmīs* and thus forcing them to flee, and allow no mighty to oppress the weak; on the contrary, he would pay everybody's stipends and maintenance when they were due and treat remote provincials on a par with subjects close at hand; and he would step down if he acted otherwise (provided that he had been given the opportunity to repent) or if a more suitable candidate for the job could be found. Observing the command of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet amounted to following 'the way of your best people in the past' (*sabil man salafa min khiyārikum*), as he said in his letter to the people of Iraq, or in other words to pay attention to what his subjects took to be right practice. Like al-Ḥārith b. Surayj, he held that *al-amr shūrā*, or in other words that the caliphate should be elective. To everyone except the followers of the *ahl al-bayt*, the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet stood for a rejection of absolutism, justice being a matter of consultation. To the followers of the *ahl al-bayt*, of course, it stood for a rejection of the Umayyads only, what they hankered for being the unlimited power of a different house. But either way, *al-qiyām bi'l-sunna wa'-'adl* had little or nothing to do with prophetic rules attested in Ḥadīth.

64 Cf. below, appendix 2, p. 128.
65 Note also that in Jābīr's letter to a certain 'Abd al-Malik a man who is angry on God's behalf calls not only to the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet, but also to the *sunna* of the believers after him (Barrādī, *Jawāhir*, p. 164; garbled in Izkawi, *Kashf*, p. 304).
66 Tab., ser. ii, p. 1804.
When then do we first come across the concept of a Prophetic sunna endowed with a content of its own? Allegedly, it is attested as early as the first civil war in the arbitration document drawn up after the battle of Siffin. (Incidentally, the non-Muslim contention that it was the Syrians who won this battle is corroborated by Umayyad court poetry). 67 But the more plausible version of this document states that the arbiters should seek guidance in the book of God and, failing that, in al-sunna al-‘ādila al-jāmi‘a ghayr al-mufarriqa, ‘the just sunna which unites people and does not set them apart’, not the sunna of the Prophet. 68 To later Muslims this was unintelligible. ‘Where is that sunna, where should one seek it, what is its form, what is its formulation, what is the basis of its meaning?’, as al-Jāḥiz asked in outrage, concluding that the original reference must have been to the sunna of the Prophet; 69 and another version of the document (B) duly replaces the offensive expression with a hybrid sunnat rasūl Allāh al-jāmi‘a. But what the document referred to was clearly a sunna conceived in purely pre-Islamic terms. 70

The arbitration document illustrates a problem familiar to all students of early Islamic history, viz. that the historical tradition was updated in the course of its transmission. 71 As it happens, document A survives. Had it been lost, we should still have argued against the

70 Cf. the pre-Islamic phrase hifj jāmi‘ ghayr muḥarrqa adduced by Hinds, ‘Arbitration Agreement’, p. 101. The Shi‘ites also understood the sunna in question as a Prophetic one, cf. Ibn Abī l-Ḥadid, Sharḥ, vol. xvii, p. 52, where ‘All’s instructions to al-Ashtar on the latter’s appointment to Egypt include the statement that al-radd ilā ‘l-rasāl (Qur. 4:62) equals al-akhdh bi-sunnatihi l-jāmi‘a ghayr al-mufarriqa.
71 Compare ‘Iṣa‘d, vol. iv, p. 457; here al-Walīd II tells Shurā‘a that he did not summon him to ask him about kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabīyyihi, but rather to discuss wine (similarly, vol. vi, p. 336); but in Aghānī, vol. vii, p. 49, he says that he did not summon him to ask him about ‘ilm, get a fatwā from him on fiqh, or hear him tell Ḥadīth or recite the Qurān. In the first passage he is presumably saying that he is not interested in boring talk about pious practice illustrated with reference to the Qurān of the type found in the theological epistles; in the second passage he spells out what a classical scholar understood by the collocation. Compare also Dhahabī, Siyar, vol. v, p. 372; Aghānī, vol. vii, p. 83. Here al-Mahdī says that al-Walīd II was not a zindiq, given that God would not place His caliphate with somebody who did not believe in Him; but in the second version of this story, it is al-Mahdī who says that he was a zindiq and a faqīh who objects on the ground that God would not appoint someone who did not believe in Him to khilāfat al-nabīyya (as opposed to khilāfat Allāh) and amr al-umma.
authenticity of document B's rendition on the ground that so early an occurrence of Prophetic *sunna* as a source in its own right is implausible in the light of other evidence. This is a less conclusive argument, but documents like A do not always survive, and there are passages in the tradition to which it must be applied. We take it that poetry and documents were more resistant to updating than the rest of the tradition (though evidently not impervious to it, given that they were preserved within it, and evidently not always authentic in the first place either); and we treat with special respect un-classical sounding statements in the sources on the ground that they are likely to be survivals. Where such evidence adds up to a consistent picture, we dismiss classical-sounding statements contradicting it, as for example 'Umar's long suspect instructions to the *qādī* and similar material.72 But inevitably much of our evidence is of a somewhat indeterminate status: it might be authentic (or at least early) or it might not be. Where this is the case, we have chosen to err (for the sake of the argument) on the side of credulity.

Turning now to the theological epistles extant from the Umayyad and/or early 'Abbāsid periods, we find that prophetic *sunna* is here usually mentioned in collocation with the book of God, usually with the same insubstantial meaning of 'right practice' as in the parlance of the Umayyads, their poets and their opponents. Thus the letter ascribed to al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī declares that 'every doctrine which has no proof from God is an error', all while referring with approval to the fact that its author has learned from 'the ancestors who acted in accordance with God's command, transmitted His wisdom and followed the *sunna* of the Prophet' (*istannī bi-sunnat rasūl Allāh*),73 suggesting that the author was a Qur'ānic fundamentalist for whom the sole source of *sunna* was the Qur'ān as interpreted by people of whom he approved. The Qur'ān is also the sole concrete source of *sunna* in the letter of Jābir to a certain 'Abd al-Malik,74 while the traditions cited in the epistle attributed to 'Umar II can be dismissed

72 Cf. D. Margoliouth, 'Omar's Instructions to the Kadi', *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 1910; compare 'Umar on *kitāb* and *sunna* in Wāḥi', *Qudāh*, vol. u, p. 189 and passim; Tab., ser. i, p. 1754, where the Prophet himself exhorts people to stick to *kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihi*; and numerous passages of the same kind scattered throughout the sources.


74 As noted by J. Schacht, 'Sur l'expression "Sunna du Prophète"' in *Mélanges d'Orientalisme offerts à Henri Massé*, Tehran 1963, pp. 363f. Note also how knowledge of *kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat rasūlihi* ends up as knowledge of *kitāb Allāh* in the story told in Wāḥi', *Qudāh*, vol. ii, p. 30.
as intrusive. All the epistles are heavily Qur'ānic, and in general sunna does not in their parlance have anything to do with Ḥadīth.

Even so, they are not all completely innocent of it. Thus it is in response to the question whether his views were based on transmission from one of the Companions of the Prophet that the author of al-Ḥasan's letter declares himself a Qur'ānic fundamentalist; in other words, Companion Ḥadīth existed though he did not feel bound by it. One epistle, the Sūrat Sālim, cites concrete examples of Prophetic action as well as a Prophetic dictum, while another (the Ibadī letter to a certain Shī'ite formerly known as Ibn Ibad's second letter to 'Abd al-Malik) argues against Shī'ite Ḥadīth in a manner ruling out the possibility of interpolation. None of the letters can be precisely dated, however; in fact, such provisional dates as they have turn partly on the presence or otherwise of Ḥadīth in them. They suggest that Ḥadīth was in the making in the late Umayyad period, but that is all one can say.

Legal Ḥadīth, however, similarly suggests that it was in the late Umayyad period that Ḥadīth acquired currency, if again without providing any firm dates. In early Ḥadīth legal questions later to be resolved by the Prophet are often resolved by jurists (fuqahā') acting as authorities in their own right. Most of them belong to the mid and late Umayyad period, though many of their views are likely to have been ascribed to them after their death. Now their views coexist with numerous traditions from early caliphs and other Companions, occasionally even the Prophet, which seem to reflect the same stage of legal development; and if this is correct, the traditions in question must have been current in the late Umayyad/early 'Abbāsid periods too. Elsewhere we are told that 'Abd al-Malik warned the Medinese against the flood of unknown aḥādīth coming from Iraq (or more precisely al-mashriq), telling them to stick to the mushaf collected by 'Uthmān, al-imām al-mazlūm, and to the sarā'id similarly collected by him in collaboration with Zayd b. Thābit. Eastern Ḥadīth is here something contrasted with caliphal scripture and law, not with Prophetic practice preserved by the Medinese; and though 'Abd al-Malik may never had said anything of the kind, the statement must

75 Cf. Cook, Dogma, pp. 125ff.; Zimmermann, 'Koran and Tradition'.
76 Cf. the discussion in Cook, Dogma, ch. 3.
78 Cook, Dogma, pp. 99f.
79 Cook, Dogma, pp. 18ff, cf. pp. 53ff.
80 Cf. Crone, Roman, Provincial and Islamic Law, ch. 2.
surely antedate the fall of the Umayyads. In fact, by the late Umayyad period even al-Farazdaq knew of people who related from the Prophet, while another poet who died in the 740s spoke of the Prophet’s *sunna* as something which it was useful to study. Distressingly vague though the evidence is, it thus seems reasonable to conclude that by the end of the Umayyad period the *sunna* of the Prophet had acquired a content of its own. This is not to say that every rule in it was ascribed to the Prophet himself; on the contrary, cherished practices and clever opinions ascribed to local sages were Prophetic *sunna* only in the sense that they were *ra’y rashīd*. But under the aegis of the Prophet there was now a concrete alternative to caliphal practice, and this is the point of importance here: by the late Umayyad period the Prophet had not only acquired his capital *P*, but also sponsored a law conceived in opposition to that of the Deputy.

Even so, it must be stressed that what the scholars took to be Prophetic *sunna* scarcely surfaced in the Umayyad period outside the circles of the scholars themselves. Practically no traditions, be they Prophetic or other, are cited in letters or speeches by Umayyad caliphs, governors or secretaries. None seem to be adduced by rebels. Scarcely any appear in theological epistles. Hardly any are cited in accounts about Umayyad judges, judges being required to

82 Farazdaq, vol. ii, p. 846-9 (people of learning who relate from the Prophet say that if prophecy had not come to an end, Hishām would have been in receipt of revelation). Both Hishām and al-Walīd I were familiar with traditions of the same type (whoever has been caliph for three days escapes hell fire; God counts the good deeds of a caliph only, not the bad ones), but neither identified them as traditions from the Prophet (cf. the references given below, chapter 6, notes 60, 61).

83 ‘Urwa b. ‘Udhayna (d. c. 130), p. 91*: minnā al-nabī’i’ummī sunnatuhu fādila nāfī ta’allumuhā.

84 Cf. above, note 41.

85 For a rare example, see Dhahabi, *Siyar*, vol. iv, p. 247, where ‘Abd al-Malik cites a well known Prophetic tradition on the dire fate of those who refuse to go on campaign (*mā min muslim lā yaghzū aw yujahhizu ghāziyy* . . . *illā aṣābahu ‘llāh bi-qār‘a gabla ‘lmawīt*) in an oration delivered from the *minbar*, saying that he had heard it from Abū Hurayra. Given al-Dhahabi’s date, his testimony is not of course particularly compelling: the context is ‘Abd al-Malik’s Medinese upbringing and his reputation as a *faqīh* (cf. above, chapter 4, note 46). In another late source, Ibn ‘Asākir, *Tahdhib*, vol. iv, p. 51, al-Ḥajjāj cites Prophetic traditions complete with *ṣnāds*: one, which he invoked in his *khutba*, had been transmitted via *khutbas* by ‘Uthmān to Marwān to ‘Abd al-Malik. Compare also *ibid.* vol. iii, pp. 287, 450, where ‘Abd al-Malik and Hishām are told Prophetic traditions by others.

86 Umayyad judges appear as transmitters of Prophetic Ḥadīth every now and again in Wakt, *Qudāth*, e.g. vol. i, pp. 304, 324f., cf. 337; vol. ii, pp. 15ff., 23ff., 54; vol. iii, pp. 37ff., 117. But most of the traditions cited are non-legal, even in the case of
know the Qur'an, not tradition. If our records of Islamic civilisation had stopped in 750, hadith would have appeared to us as a marginal phenomenon. We would have been familiar with the concept of sunna, both Prophetic and other, and we would have known that fuqaha' engaged in the study of the law had begun to acquire some local standing; but we would not have ascribed much importance to tradition. To all this there is only one alleged exception: the sources insist that a Prophetic sunna with a content of its own came to the surface for a brief while under 'Umar II.

'Umar II is said to have made use of the collocation kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihi, not only in connection with the lilaririyya, but also in statements of policy. Thus he professed himself bent on iḥyā' kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyihi, held that no obedience was due to any governor of his who did not act in accordance with the kitāb and sunna, informed his governor of Basra that adjudication should be based primarily on kitāb Allāh and secondarily on sunnat rasūl Allāh, and stressed the overriding importance of adhering to both.

judges who died in the early 'Abbāsid period such as Ibn Shubruma and al-Hajjāj b. Aṣṭāh. Companion Ḥadith is rarer, though the khulafa' al-rashidūn al-mahdiyyūn are invoked on a legal point in vol. 1, p. 295. In Kindi, Governors, aqādī who died in 83/702f. cites a legal dictum of 'Umar's at p. 319, but no Prophetic precedent is invoked here until the reign of al-Mahdī, in which a judge was dismissed for 'perverting sunnat rasūl Allāh', having refused to recognise the legal validity of aḥbās even though it was recognised by the Prophet, Abū Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthmān, Ṭalḥa, al-Zubayr and others (p. 372; similiary Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, Futūḥ Miṣr, p. 244, cf. the glossary at p. 56 for the verb yakīdu).

87 Ibn Hubayra wanted to know whether Iyās b. Mu'āwiya, aqādī of Basra, could recite the Qur'an and knew any poetry and ayyām al-ʿarab, the answer to all three questions being positive (Wakī', Quḍāḥ, vol. 1, pp. 351f.). Marwān I wanted to know whether the qaḍī of Egypt had memorised the Qur'an, knew the farāʾīd and could write, the answer to all three questions being negative (Kindi, Governors, p. 312). When 'Umar's governor of Mecca appointed a mawla as subgovernor, he justified it with reference to the fact that he could recite the book and knew the farāʾīd (al-Fākhi, Akhbār Maḳka, ed. F. Wüstenfeld, Leipzig 1859 p. 36). Knowledge of sunna, let alone sunna exemplified in Ḥadith, does not seem to have been a desideratum.

88 Cf. Tab., ser. ii, p. 1571, where we are told that the governor of Khurāsān had sent fuqahā' and qurrā' to negotiate with al-Ḥārith b. Surayj in the expectation that al-Ḥārith would similarly send men to him.


91 Wakī', Quḍāḥ, vol. i. p. 77; Bal., Ans. (MS), vol. ii, fol. 72a.

92 Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, Ṣira, pp. 69ff. In this letter, supposedly written on his accession, 'Umar II refers to the book and sunna time and again; even so, the examples of Prophetic sunna are all Qur'ānic.
What is more, he made it clear that for him the Prophet’s *surma* had a content of its own. Thus, we are told, he gave orders for the *ahl al-’ilm* to disseminate their knowledge in the mosques, complaining that ‘the *sunna* has been rendered dead’, and for the *ahl al-šalāh* to be supported by the treasury so that they could devote themselves to recitation of the Qur’ān and transmission of *ahādīth*. He wrote to Abū Bakr b. (Muḥammad b. ‘Amr b.) Ḥazm in Medina, telling him to write down such *hadīth rasūl Allāh* as he could find there on the ground that both *’ilm* and *’ulamā‘* might disappear. He emphasized that one should stick to the *sunna* of the Messenger and leave off what had been innovated after him, instructing Abū Bakr b. Ḥazm to accept nothing but Prophetic Hadīth and elsewhere quoting the *ahl al-sunna* as saying that sticking to the *sunna* brings salvation.

In general, he pronounced himself to be a mere imitator (*muqtadī*) rather than an adjudicator (*qādī*), and it was in this spirit that he allegedly refused to be known as *kha/ifat Al/iih*. How much of this is true? Possibly none of it.

We do not wish to deny that ‘Umar II was an unusual caliph. As little as twenty years after his death even so rabidly anti-Umayyad a rebel as Abū Ḥamza al-Khāriji refrained from condemning him, merely saying that though he had good intentions, he failed to carry them out; and a few year after Abī Ḥamza had exempted him from hell-fire, the ‘Abbasid avengers similarly exempted him from the exhumation and posthumous execution which other Umayyad caliphs had to undergo, sparing the life of his son and grandson too.

97 Bukhārī, *Recueil*, vol. i, p. 37. But we are told that this bit was missing in Ibn Dinār’s version.
98 Ṣafwat, *Rasā‘il*, vol. ii, p. 360 (citing Ibn al-Jawzī, *Ṣira*, p. 68); cf. p. 350 (p. 67), where there is ‘isma in following the *sunna*.
100 Cf. above, chapter 2, note 18.
101 Cf. appendix 3, p. 130.
103 ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. ‘Umar was spared when Diwūd b. ‘Ālī interceded for him (*Aghānī*, vol. iv, p. 346) and was later to be found among the *saḥāba* of Abū Ja’far (Abū Zur’a, *Ta’rīkh*, ed. Sh. al-Qūjānī, Damascus 1980, p. 569, no. 15679). Ādam
Shi'ite sources extol his virtues;\textsuperscript{104} Christian sources deplore his zeal for Islam;\textsuperscript{105} and Sunni sources describe him as the \textit{mahdi}, an epithet which numerous Umayyad caliphs have in court poetry, but which only he has retained outside it.\textsuperscript{106} We take it that his unusual role was at least in part forced upon him by his name and date.\textsuperscript{107} However this may be, the fact that posterity accepted him as a rightly guided caliph also means that it fathered a great many later views on him. It is by no means implausible that he undertook to rule in accordance with the book of God and the \textit{sunna} of the prophet in the same sense as Yazid III was to do so,\textsuperscript{108} that is by renouncing the most unpopular aspects of Umayyad policy. Thus we are told of the scrupulous attention he paid to proper use of public funds,\textsuperscript{109} of his rejection of conventional fripperies associated with caliphal ceremonial,\textsuperscript{110} of his obsession with justice and equality,\textsuperscript{111} of his

\textit{b}. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. ‘Umar was spared by ‘ Abdallāh b. ‘ Alī (Ibn ‘Asākir, \textit{Tahdhib}, vol. ii, p. 364) and went on to find favour with Abū-l-‘Abbās and al-Mahdī (\textit{Aghānī}, vol. xv, pp. 286ff.).


\textsuperscript{106} Cf. below, appendix 1, p. 114. Sulaymān is also \textit{mahdi} in both poetry and prose to the extent that al-Mas‘ūdī credits him with the \textit{laqab} al-Mahdī (Mas., \textit{Tanbih}, p. 335); but al-Mas‘ūdī’s Umayyad \textit{alqāb} are all spurious whereas ‘Umar II was remembered as the Mahdī in a very real sense.

\textsuperscript{107} Below, appendix 1.

\textsuperscript{108} Cf. Tab., ser. ii, p. 1835, where one of Yazid III’s supporters describes the latter as even better than ‘Umar II.

\textsuperscript{109} This comes over strongly in his refusal to accord largesse to poets from \textit{māl Allāh/bayt al-māl} (\textit{Aghānī}, vol. viii, p. 48, vol. xi, p. 283) and what he did give them came in small amounts, from his own \textit{‘atā} in one case (\textit{ibid}. vol. viii, p. 48) and from a whip-round among his \textit{ummahāt al-awlād} in another (Ibn ‘Asākir. \textit{Tahdhib}, vol. v, p. 251). We also find him quibbling about the governor of Medina’s consumption of candle-wax and wicks, and telling him that smaller writing will obviate the need for any increase in the quantity of \textit{tawāmīr/qarātīs} required (Ibn Sa‘d, \textit{Tabaqāt}, vol. v, p. 400; Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam. \textit{Ṣira}. pp. 64ff.). And he is said to have taken nothing for himself from the treasury (\textit{Iqd}, vol. iv, p. 434).

\textsuperscript{110} Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam, \textit{Ṣira}, pp. 38ff. (a substantial list of items); Waki‘, \textit{Qudāḥ} vol. ii, p. 43 and Ibn Abī l-Ḥadid, \textit{Sharḥ}, vol. xvii, p. 100 (rejection of caliphal seating arrangements).

\textsuperscript{111} He sought (and received) from al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī a treatise on \textit{al-imām al-‘ādil} (Safwat, \textit{Rasā’il}, vol. ii, pp. 378–80, citing the \textit{Iqd} and Ibn al-Jawzī), and the poet Jarīr saw fit to describe him as such (cf. above, chapter 3, note 101); in addition to the recurrent concern for \textit{‘adl} and the elimination of \textit{zulm} exhibited in the extensive moralising correspondence with governors which is attributed to him, note can be made of the references to \textit{‘adl} in what purport to be his \textit{tawqīfūt} (Safwat,
concern for the poor, the needy, widows and orphans,\textsuperscript{112} of his open condemnation of governors such as al-Ḥajjāj,\textsuperscript{113} of his conciliation of the 'Alids and their supporters,\textsuperscript{114} and of his redressing of wrongs perpetrated above all by Marwānids.\textsuperscript{115} Indeed the threat posed by 'Umar to the material interests of the Marwānids,\textsuperscript{116} together with his undisguised criticism of his Marwānid predecessors\textsuperscript{117} and his indication that he might well displace Yazīd b. 'Abd al-Malik from the Marwānid succession and instead opt for a shūrā,\textsuperscript{118} would appear to render the claim that he was poisoned\textsuperscript{119} more cogent than Rasūl, vol. ii, pp. 580ff., citing the 'Iqd and other sources). He is reported to have declared that his ahl bayt had no more right to arzāq khāṣṣa than anybody else. On his even-handed treatment of converts, see Et\textsuperscript{s} s.v. 'mawlä' section (c) and the literature cited there.

\textsuperscript{112} Wak'il, Qudāh, vol. iii, p. 33 (elegy by Muḥarrīb b. Dīthār). Note too the correspondence cited by Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam (Sīra, pp. 66ff.) relating to a poor woman in Egypt whose chickens were being stolen.


\textsuperscript{114} He put a stop to the lān/shātim of 'Ali on Umayyad manābīr (Ibn Sa'd, Ta'baqāt, vol. v, pp. 393f; al-Ya'qūbī, Ta'rīkh, vol. ii, p. 366; Bal., Ans. (MS), vol. ii, fol. 92b; Aghānī, vol. ix, p. 258\textsuperscript{*}), a practice which had been introduced by Mu'āwiya ('Iqd, vol. iv, p. 366); and he returned the oasis of Fadak in the Hijāz to the descendants of Fāṭima (Ibn Sa'd, Ta'baqāt, vol. v, pp. 388ff.; Ya'qūbī, Ta'rīkh, vol. ii, p. 366; Bal., Futūḥ, p. 32; 'Iqd, vol. iv, p. 435).

\textsuperscript{115} Aghānī, vol. ix, p. 255ff. (he took over what his lūḥma and and ahl bayt possessed wa-samāmā d'mālāhum al-mazālim); similarly Ya'qūbī, Ta'rīkh, vol. ii, p. 366; Ibn Abī 'l-Ḥādīd, Sharḥ, vol. xvii, p. 98 (he earned the hatred of the Marwānids on account of the mazālim perpetrated by them), 100 (he restored everything wrongfully in the hands of his ahl bayt, and he returned to a dhimmī from Ḥīmān an estate which had been taken over by al-Abbās b. al-Walīd b. 'Abd al-Malik), 104 (he took a qaṭī'a away from one of the sons of Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik). Apparently the Sufyānīds suffered too (Ibn Sa'd, Ta'baqāt, vol. v, p. 342).

\textsuperscript{116} They are reported to have owned half of the amwāl al-umma (Bal., Ans. (MS), vol. ii, fol. 66a), or between one half and two thirds (Ibn Abī 'l-Ḥādīd, Sharḥ, vol. xvii, p. 103), which 'Umar wanted to go (at least in part) to the bayt al-māl. He set a formidable example with himself and his immediate family (ibid. pp. 99, 100ff.), clamped down on 'aṭā, dīyā' and qaṭā'i' (Ibn Sa'd, Ta'baqāt, vol. v, pp. 372f.) and denied the Marwānīds what earlier caliphs had customarily given them (Ibn Abī 'l-Ḥādīd, Sharḥ, vol. xvii, pp. 104f.).

\textsuperscript{117} Ibn Abī 'l-Ḥādīd, Sharḥ, vol. xvii, p. 103 (the Marwānīds took a particular dislike to 'Umar's 'ayb of earlier caliphs/Marwānid aslāf).

\textsuperscript{118} In one account, the Marwānīds complained to 'Umar that he was doing less for them than his predecessors had done, to which he replied that, if there was any more of that sort of talk, he would move to Medina and make 'it' (scil. the caliphate, or succession to the caliphate) shūrā, the man for the job (scil. of organising this) being al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad b. Abī Bakr (Ibn Sa'd, Ta'baqāt, vol. v, p. 344); in another, he is reported to have said that, if he could have his own way, he would make 'it' shūrā between al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad, Sālim b. 'Abdallāh [b. 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb] and [the Umayyad] Iṣmā'il b. Umayya (Ibn Abī 'l-Ḥādīd, Sharḥ, vol. xv, p. 264).

Wellhausen allowed. But did his policies include attention to a concept of Prophetic sunna which, by all accounts, had only just seen the light of day in Iraq? This is what matters in the present context, and this is also what is questionable.

For one thing, al-Ṭabarî knows him to have spoken of kitâb Allâh wa-sunnat nabiyyihî only in the traditional context of negotiation with rebels. Most of the passages in which he departs from the traditional pattern are suspect on the ground that they come from the earlier, but far less stringent biography of 'Umar II by Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, and more particularly from the late biography by Ibn al-Jawzi (d. 597/1200). For another thing, the sources (and above all Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam and Ibn al-Jawzi) preserve a correspondence which is far too extensive for a caliph of so short a reign, even granted that 'Umar II may have interfered with everybody's business on an unusual scale. At least part of it must be apocryphal, and some, including some with a bearing on sunna, demonstrably is; indeed, the letter reproduced by Ibn al-Jawzi in which the ahl al-sunna are quoted on the rewards of sticking to the sunna is what one might call super-apocryphal without sounding any different from the rest.

report of Abû 'Ubayda). According to Abû 'Ubayda's account, Banû Marwân organised the poisoning of 'Umar because they feared that he would expropriate their amwâl and that he would remove Yazid from the succession, this being proposed in the course of an account where a Khârijî delegation expresses its doubts about Yazid. On the other hand, the account given by the 'Iqd attributes the poisoning to Yazid himself.

120 J. Wellhausen, The Arab Kingdom and its Fall, Calcutta 1927, p. 311.

121 And note that though others have him invoke the collocation in his last speech, what they report him as having said here is [mâdâd] min Allâh 'azza wa-jallâ kitâb natiq wa-sunna 'âdila (Aghânî, vol. IX, p. 267; 'Iqd, vol. IV, p. 96), i.e. both are God's.

122 'Umar II ruled for two and a half years, whereas 'Abd al-Malik and Hishım each ruled for twenty. Nonetheless, the reign of 'Umar II fills 81 pages in Şafwat's collection of official letters, to which the numerous letters in Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam (not used by Şafwat) should be added, whereas 'Abd al-Malik's reign fills 130 pages, from which the numerous letters not written by or to 'Abd al-Malik should be subtracted, while that of Hishım fills no more than 48.

123 It is well known that 'Umar II has been credited with an epistle against Qadarites which is extant in Abû Nu'aym's Ḥilyat al-awliyâ (edited, translated and studied by J. van Ess, Anfänge muslimischer Theologie, Beirut and Wiesbaden 1977). This epistle consists of an early text (B) and later additions (R) by a reviser who probably worked in ninth-century Khurásân and who attributed the revised version to 'Umar II (cf. Zimmermann, 'Koran and Tradition'). The reviser quotes the ahl al-sunna as saying that al-'itīšām bi'l-sunna najâh (R3 in Zimmermann's numeration). Ibn al-Jawzi's biography of 'Umar II includes a short version of this epistle (Şafwat, Rasâ'il, vol. II, pp. 360f.; referred to above, note 57). This version preserves R3-5, 10-11, but only one line of B (line m in Zimmermann's numeration), the rest being without parallel in Abû Nu'aym. In other words, an early text generated accretions and these accretions in due course swamped the text. The text having been falsely ascribed to 'Umar II, 'Umar II ended up as the author of these accretions after the text had been lost.
One is thus not inclined to be trusting of the rest. That 'Umar II refused to be known as *khalifat Allāh* is unlikely, as has been seen; his epistolary statements on *sunna* would seem to be no better.

Nonetheless, if for the sake of argument we choose to accept as authentic all such statements as are not demonstrably spurious, we merely reinforce the conclusion that the content of Prophetic *sunna* was largely notional in his day. 'Umar II cites (or is made to cite) very few Prophetic traditions in his various biographies: one on *jiwlir* drawn from the Constitution of Medina, another (or another two) on intoxicating drinks, another (or once more another two) on *hilf*, and the famous Ghadir Khumm tradition, all of which could well have been in circulation by his time, plus a couple of others of a more suspect kind. But he seems to have been quite unaware

124 Cf. above, chapter 2, note 19.
126 Sa'fawat, *Rasā'il*, vol. ii, p. 364 (= *lqd*, vol. vi, p. 359), 365 (= Ibn al-Jawzī, *Sīra*, p. 102); Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, *Sīra*, pp. 101 ff. All three sources reproduce a letter sent by 'Umar to his governors (Ibn 'Abd Rabbih), to his governor of Basra (Ibn al-Jawzī), to his governor of Egypt (Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam), and all three state that 'Umar II had heard (*balaghānī*) that the Prophet prohibited drinks put in *al-jiriir wa'l-dubbī wa'l-ṣuriif al-muzaffata*, saying that *kulw muskīr l}ariim*. 'Abd al-Razzāq, who died a century after 'Umar II, knew several traditions to the same effect, all Prophetic, though not the actual maxim (*Muṣannaf*, vol. ix, nos. 16924 ff., esp. nos. 16934, 16952, 16957). The maxim was known to Ibn Shubruma, *qādī* of Kufa in the late Umayyad period, though the one which he ascribed to the Prophet took a different form (*Wakī*, *Qudāh*, vol. iii, pp. 43 ff.). It appears as a Prophetic saying in al-Ṭabarānī, *al-Muṣjam al-saghir*, ed. A.-R. M. 'Uthmān, Medina 1968, vol. ii, pp. 30, 145, cf. also vol. i, p. 54; and (expanded) in classical collections, cf. Wensinck, *Concordance*, s.v. 'askara'.
127 Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, *Sīra*, p. 105; *wa-qad nahu rasūl Allāh šl'm an al-ḥilf wa-qāla lā hilf* 'fī't-Īlām, qāla wa-mā kāna min hilf fī'l-jāhiliyya fa-lam yazidhu al-Īlām illā shidda. Both are classical Prophetic traditions, cf. Wensinck, *Concordance*, s.v. 'hilf'.
128 Aghānī, vol. ix, p. 264: *man kuntu mawlāhu fa-'Alī mawlāhu*. There is no reason to doubt that this tradition existed by the second half of the Umayyad period (compare Kumayt, p. 152 = 104, no. 6:9: *wa-yawn al-daww daww Ghadir Khumm abāna lahu'l-walāya*; Ibn Shahrāshūb would have it that a poet as early as Ḥassān b. Thābit was familiar with this tradition, cf. *Manāqib*, vol. ii, p. 230; but there is no mention of this poem in the most recent edition of Ḥassān's *diwān*). This is not of course any guarantee that 'Umar II actually cited it. However this may be, the story assumes that, like the future Sunnīs, he took the tradition to mean that one should love 'Alī (and acknowledge his caliphate), not that the Prophet had designated him as his successor.
129 Cf. Ibn 'Asākir, *Tahdhib*, vol. iv, p. 146, where we are told that he cited *hadīth Māzīz*; Aghānī, vol. ix, p. 273, where we are told that *hadīth kathīr wa-fiqh* is related from him and where two Prophetic traditions are cited from him; Juynboll, *Muslim Tradition*, pp. 37 ff., for a discussion of the *musnad* of traditions which he is supposed to have transmitted, and Sa'fawat, *Rasā'il*, vol. ii, p. 313, where al-Ḥasan
of the huge mass of legal traditions ascribed to 'Umar I in classical works. He is explicitly said to have modelled his policies on those of his namesake, and on questions such as the fiscal status of converts the two 'Umars did indeed lay down very similar rules if we go by Ḥadīth. Yet 'Umar II never invokes the precedent of 'Umar I in his writings on this question. When his governors point out that his rules are bad for the treasury, that people are converting in order to escape their taxes, that they ought to be tested for circumcision, and so on, he replies that god sent Muhammad to preach (dā'īya), not to collect taxes (jābiya) or to circumcise (khātīna); in other words, he responds by invoking the general example of the Prophet, not the specific rules which 'Umar I is supposed to have fixed once and for all. It would thus seem that the famous traditions enunciating these rules did not exist at the time. The same must be true of the many other traditions attributed to 'Umar I, or to the Prophet himself, on questions which 'Umar II is said to have resolved as an authority in his own right; and one story could be taken to concede as much: we are told that when 'Umar II resolved to follow the sīra of 'Umar I, he wrote to a grandson of that caliph for ‘Umar's letters and decisions concerning Muslims and dhimmis' (kutub 'Umar wa-qadā'u hu fi ahl al-qibla waahl al-'ahd), which obviously implies that information about his administration was not generally available. (Whether he succeeded in getting hold of them is not clear.) We are also told that he disliked the caliphal role of answering questions about the law and told his governor of Basra to stop sending him people asking about the sunna and to ask al-Ḥasan al-Ḥaṣrī instead (‘but don’t let al-Ḥasan read this letter’), yet another story to the effect that however much he may have talked about the sunna of the Prophet, he did not know what it was in

al-Ḥaṣrī cites the Prophet’s treatment of the Magians of Hajar to him (compare Cook, Dogma, pp. 99f.).

130 Cf. the references given below, note 133.
134 In Ibn al-Jawzi and Ājurri the grandson's response is a long hell-fire sermon, a reminder that 'Umar I lived in a different time and worked with different men, and advice to rely on God alone: it sounds like a refusal to comply (especially if the final rajawtu is read rajawta). But Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam cuts out the hell-fire sermon, and Ibn Sa’d cuts out most of the reply, including the reference to the books.
concrete terms.\textsuperscript{135} ‘Even if his emphasis on prophetic sunna is accepted as historically established, ‘Umar II cannot in any way be identified with the knowledge and/or the transmission of a sizeable number of prophetic traditions’, as Juynboll concludes.\textsuperscript{136} If ‘Umar II tried to apply Prophetic sunna, the attempt was a failure. Either the sources misrepresent his views on the matter or else he was looking for an Abü Yusuf long before an Abü Yusuf could exist. Whichever may be the case, we are entitled to conclude that sunna in the sense of concrete rules authenticated by Hadith scarcely surfaced before the Umayyads fell.

The ‘Abbāsids

The ‘Abbāsids began with the same concept of the caliphate as the Umayyads. They styled themselves deputies of God,\textsuperscript{137} took themselves to be trustees of God,\textsuperscript{138} imams of guidance\textsuperscript{139} and imams of justice,\textsuperscript{140} and saw themselves as rightly guided.\textsuperscript{141} Indeed, epithets

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{135} Şafwat, \textit{Rasā'il} vol. ii, p. 318, citing Ibn al-Jawzi, p. 101.
\item \textsuperscript{136} Juynboll, \textit{Muslim Tradition}, p. 38.
\item \textsuperscript{137} Cf. above, chapter 2, pp. 13ff.
\item \textsuperscript{139} For the ‘Abbāsids as \textit{a'immat al-hudā}, see Şafwat, \textit{Rasā'il}, vol. iii, p. 385, cf. 397 (all up to al-Ma’mūn); Tab., ser. iii, p. 2177 (all up to al-Mu’taḍid); Waki', \textit{Qudāh}, vol. ii, p. 132\textsuperscript{1}; Bashshār b. Burd, vol. i, p. 275; vol. ii, p. 88; vol. iii, p. 290 (al-Mahdī); Aghānī, vol. xviii, p. 240\textsuperscript{2} (also cited in Mas., Murūj, vol. ii, §758 = ii, p. 337); vol. v, p. 304 (Hārūn, though the second passage may refer to al-Mu’taṣīm); Aghānī, vol. xx, p. 302 (al-Ahmīn); Khaṣīb, \textit{Baghdād}, vol. x, p. 189\textsuperscript{3} (al-Ma'mūn); Tab., ser. iii, p. 1387; Aghānī, vol. xix, p. 302\textsuperscript{4}; Ibn ‘Asākir, \textit{Tahdhib}, vol. iv, p. 252 (al-Mutawakkil). Cf. also Aghānī, vol. iv, p. 350, penult. (Ibrāhīm al-imām); vol. iii, p. 302, penult. (where ‘Abbās is wāli al-hudā). In view of these (and many other) references, Shaban’s theory that it was not until al-Ma’mūn that the ‘Abbāsids had the nerve to adopt the title of \textit{imām} must be regarded as untenable (M. A. Shaban, \textit{Islamic History: a New Interpretation}, vol. ii, Cambridge 1976, pp. 2, 8, 46ff.).
\item \textsuperscript{140} For al-Mansūr as \textit{al-hākim al-‘āmil, see Waki'}, \textit{Qudāh}, vol. ii, p. 75. Both al-Ma’mūn and al-Mutawakkil were flattered as \textit{imām al-adl} (Aghānī vol. xx, p. 244\textsuperscript{v}; vol. xxiii, p. 213\textsuperscript{1}; ‘Iqd, vol. i, p. 37119).
\item \textsuperscript{141} \textit{anta mahdīyya} Hāshimīn \textit{wa-hudāhā/ridāhā/fatāhā}, as Abū 'l-‘Abbās was told (Aghānī, vol. iv, p. 345\textsuperscript{4}; Bal., \textit{Ans.}, vol. iii, p. 162\textsuperscript{2} and the note thereto). But then Abū ‘l-‘Abbās was not just \textit{mahdī}, but the Mahdī and Qā'im (cf. the evidence

such as al-hādi, al-mahādi, al-rashīd and al-amīn, which court poets had bestowed on the Umayyads, now reappeared as regnal titles of the 'Abbāsids, now as then with a strong redemptive overtone.\textsuperscript{142} Like the Umayyads, the 'Abbāsids were the best of creation after the Prophet,\textsuperscript{143} almost prophets themselves,\textsuperscript{144} and chosen by God\textsuperscript{145} to be heirs of the prophets,\textsuperscript{146} but of the Prophet above all.\textsuperscript{147} Unlike the Umayyads, they were also kinsmen of the Prophet,\textsuperscript{148} to whose legacy they had a hereditary right,\textsuperscript{149} and thus able to pride themselves


\textsuperscript{142} Cf. B. Lewis, 'The Regnal Titles of the First Abbasid Caliphs', Dr. Zakir Husain \textit{Presentation Volume}, New Delhi 1968; and the more recent and fuller discussion in Dūrī, 'Fikra'. Nagel's views on the regnal titles of Abī 'l-'Abbis should be revised in the light of these two works (cf. \textit{Rechtteitug}, p. 91). To the attestations mentioned by Lewis of the appellation of al-saffāh having been applied to 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallah b. 'Ali can now be added Ajbār Mūchma, ed. E. Lafuente y Alcántara, Madrid 1867, p. 46 (dismissed by Moscati, 'Massacre', p. 95) and Ibn 'Asākir, \textit{Tadhhib}, vol. iv, p. 391.

\textsuperscript{143} Cf. Goldziher, \textit{Muslim Studies}, vol. ii, pp. 55f. 'You have nothing between yourself and your lord, exalted is His name, except the nabī al-hudā', as al-Mutawakkil was told (Aghānī, vol. x, p. 228\textsuperscript{f}).

\textsuperscript{144} \textit{Fa-ka'annahu ba' da l-rasūl rasūl}, as Hārūn was told; but note that Hārūn was offended by this verse, though he generally did not mind being praised in the same terms as prophets (Aghānī, vol. xii, p. 144\textsuperscript{f}).

\textsuperscript{145} Wākī', Qudāh, vol. ii, p. 153, where Hārūn is al-imām al-muṣṭafā, as Jarīr had once characterised al-Walīd I (p. 492\textsuperscript{f}); Ibn Kathīr, Bīdāya, vol. x, p. 268, where al-Ma'mūn is told that antum ahl bayt ṣafāfīkum Allāh min bayni 'ibādīhi.\textsuperscript{146} Cf. 'Iqd, vol. ii, p.160\textsuperscript{f-f}a, where al-Manṣūr is 'alā ʿirith min Solomon, Job and Joseph; Aghānī, vol. xi, p. 340, where a qādī protests to al-Ma'mūn by the One who akramaka bīl-khiṭāfā wa-warrathaka mīrātā al-nubuwwa; and Tab., ser. iii, p. 1112, where al-Ma'mūn states that God has made the caliphs inherit mawārīth al-nubuwwa.

\textsuperscript{146} B. al-'Abbās have inherited the ʿirith of Muhammad (Aghānī, vol. xx, p. 238\textsuperscript{f}); the Commander of the Faithful and his family are wārithū ʿl-nabī (ibid., vol. iii, p. 293\textsuperscript{f}); they have inherited khilāfāt Allāh from khāṭām al-anbāyīa (ibid., vol. xx, p. 54\textsuperscript{f}f); God placed the ʿirith of the Prophet with His khalīfā ("Iqd, vol. iv., p. 242\textsuperscript{f}f"); al-Mahdī was the son of the one who warṣīha ʿl-nabī (ibid., vol. i, p. 360\textsuperscript{f}).

\textsuperscript{148} Ibn 'amm al-rasūl, ibn 'amm Muḥammad, as poets would dutifully describe them (Fulayl; in Aghānī, vol. iv, p. 360\textsuperscript{f}; Ashja', ibid., vol. xviii, p. 214\textsuperscript{f}); also cited in Ibn 'Asākir, Tadhhib, vol. iii, p. 63.

\textsuperscript{149} Notwithstanding the fact that some Syrians had been under the impression that the Umayyads were the sole relatives and legatees of the Prophet (Bal., Ans., vol. iii, pp. 159\textsuperscript{f}; Mas., Murūj, vol. iii, §1845 = v, p. 83).
on the fact that they 'did not make the rasūl secondary in importance to (dūna) the khalīfa'.

But the caliphal institution and/or the caliph himself continued to be seen as guidance and light, a source of healing and a refuge against error, God's rope and the pillar of Islam. In short, the caliph remained indispensable for the attainment of salvation: he was 'the imam through obedience to whom one escapes the centre of the fire on the day of judgement', as al-Sayyid al-Ḥimyarī said of al-Manṣūr. 'He who does not take refuge with God's trustee will not benefit from the five prayers', as Ḥarūn and al-Muṭṭāṣim were told. In a passage echoing al-Walid II's sacred history Ibn al-Muqaffa' refers to the fact that God's religion is maintained by 'His prophets, deputies and friends on earth (anbīya'uhu wa-khulafā'uhu wa-a%/iyī'uhu fi arḍiḥī); and even a scholar such as Abū Yūsuf held that 'God ... has instituted the holders of authority as deputies on earth and given them a light to illuminate for the subjects those of their affairs which are obscure to them and to clarify those duties about which they are in doubt.'


151 The caliphs are dhawā' l-mūr wa'l-hudā (Aghānī, vol. iii, p. 294*); they are ā'yā' and mūr (ibid., vol. v, p. 303*, cf. pp. 304*, 329*); sirāj al-nahār and baḍr al-zulm (ibid., vol. vii, p. 19511); they set up the beacon of guidance (ibid., vol. xiv, p. 19911); they have nūr al-khilāfā ('Iqd, vol. i, p. 363*; vol. v, p. 9113); compare nūr amīr al-mu'mīnīn (Ṣafwat, Rasā'il, vol. iii, p. 424).


153 Cf. Aghānī, vol. v, p. 303*, where B. al-'Abbās are not just ā'yā' l-lī'īlūb and mūr, but also shīfā.

154 The grave of ībrāhīm al-Imām in Ḥarūn was 'ismat al-dīn (Bal., Ans., vol. iii, p. 126, ult., with further references). God had made the 'Abbāsids the kāhfs and hīṣn of His religion according to Abū 'l-Abbās (Tab., ser. iii, p. 29). al-Ma'mūn was a 'isma to people which distinguished between al-dalāla wa'l-rushd ('Iqd, vol. vi, p. 3714, where the line is attributed to Zulzul; Aghānī, vol. xxiii, p. 394*, and vol. vii, p. 16514, where it is attributed to Ibn al-Bawwāb and Ḥusayn b. al-Ḍāḥīk respectively, and where mukhayyira has been replaced by mumayyīza). Al-Wāthiq was also a 'isma l-l'khālq (Aghānī, vol. vii, p. 15917). And al-Mu'tazz held that God had made khilāfatahu li-dinīhī 'ismat17 (above, chapter 2, note 31).

155 For al-Mutawakkil, see the reference given above, chapter 3, note 128. For al-Manṣūr's description of the caliphate as ḥabl Allāh al-matīn wa-ʻirwatuhu 'l-wuthqā, see Tab., ser. iii, p. 447.


158 Cf. above, chapter 3, note 49.


160 Abū Yūsuf, Kitāb al-khāraj, ed. I 'Abbās, Beirut, Cairo and London 1985, p. 71. There is a full translation of this passage in Goldziher, Muslim Studies, vol. ii, p. 68; Lambton, State and Government, p. 56; B. Lewis, Islam from the Prophet
Like the Umayyads, Abū Yūsuf perceived the guiding light in legal terms, its main function being to maintain the ḥudūd, uphold rights and re-establish good practices instituted by righteous men (iḥyā‘ al-sunan allatī sannaha al-qawm al-ṣāliḥūn), a statement apt to suggest to the unwary that the relationship between caliphate and law had scarcely changed.

There are indeed passages in which the 'Abbāsids speak of Prophetic sunna in its traditional sense of acceptable practice. Like Yazīd III, they owed their power to a revolt which had involved a call to the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet; and like him, they referred to this fact on their accession: they would rule their subjects in accordance with the book of God and the sīra/sunna of the messenger of God, Dāwūd b. 'Alī said, speaking on behalf of Abū l-'Abbās. This clearly meant that they pledged themselves to adherence to what their subjects perceived to be justice, not to observance of a Prophetic sunna embodied in Ḥadīth: the followers of the 'Abbāsids had made an oath of allegiance on justice ('adl), as Sharīk b. Shaykh paraphrased it, or on the observance of justice and the re-establishment of good practices (iqāmat al-'adl wa-iḥyā‘ al-sunan), as Ziyād b. Ṣāliḥ put it. When, on the death of Abū l-'Abbās, Īsā b. 'Alī said that 'God honoured him with His caliphate and re-established the sunna of the Prophet through him', we are hardly to take it that the sunna of the Prophet stood for anything concrete. The expression is also used in its pre-classical sense elsewhere.

Nonetheless, it is clear that sunna as exemplified in Ḥadīth was


161 Ibd.
162 Cf. above, note 9.
163 Tab., ser. iii, p. 31 (sīra); Ya‘qūbī, Ta‘rīkh, vol. ii, p. 420 and Ibn Abī l-Ḥadīd, Sharḥ, vol. vii, p. 154 (sunna). The two terms were practically synonymous at the time (Bravmann, Spiritual Background, pp. 134ff.; Bravmann’s opinion that sīrat Rasūl Allāh, ‘the procedure/practice of the Prophet’, had not yet acquired the meaning of ‘biography of the Prophet’ is corroborated by the fact that Ibn Ishāq’s biography of the Prophet was not originally known as sīrat Rasūl Allāh, cf. the article by Hinds referred to below, note 207).
164 Bal., Ans., vol. iii, p. 171.
165 Bal., Ans., vol. iii, p. 168.
166 Bal., Ans., vol. iii, pp. 186f.
167 Note in particular Ḥud, vol. iv, p. 24018-19, where Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Malik al-Zayyāt states that caliphs have a right to tā’ and nashīha from their subjects, while the subjects have a right to ‘adl, ra‘fa and iḥyā‘ al-sunan al-ṣāliḥa from the caliphs.
something with which the 'Abbāsids had to coexist from the start. Abū Muslim had been confronted with Pharisaic asḥāb al-hadīth who wished to test his knowledge of fiqh on his appearance in Khurāsān; and when government came to be conducted from Iraq, it soon became a matter of public knowledge that people there professed to have discovered what sunna was in concrete terms. Seen through the eyes of al-Manṣūr, this comes across as an exciting development in scholarship with a minor political pay-off. Already before his accession, we are told, he 'had roamed the earth... written [down] Ḥadīth and acted as a transmitter in mosques'; and after his accession too he 'remained well known for seeking 'ilm, fiqh and āthār'. He displayed particular interest in such sunan as the scholars could trace back to his own ancestors: thus the Meccan scholar Ibn Jurayj, who was short of cash, was lucky to have in his possession an unrivalled collection of hadīth Ibn 'Abbās; and the mashādyikh of Banū Hāshim self-consciously donned rose-coloured (muwārrad) robes of ihrām when performing the pilgrimage in accordance with a tradition in which 'Alī, acting as spokesman of the Hāshimites, puts 'Umar in his place on questions of sunna. Fuqahā' had accompanied Abū Ja'far and other Hāshimites on a journey to Abū Muslim in Khurāsān on the accession of Abū l-'Abbās; and when Abū Ja'far had become al-Manṣūr, he admitted Ibn Ṭahmān, the author of a book on sunan fi 'l-fiqh, to his majlis and paid him an allowance. But pace Nagel, none of this seems to have influenced his concept of the caliphal office or his style of government.

168 Bal., Ans., vol. iii, p. 132.

169 al-Maqdisi, Kitāb al-bad' wa'l-ta'rikh, ed. C. Huart, Paris 1899–1919, vol. vi, p. 90. To al-Maqdisi, a Mu'tazilite, this was one of al-Manṣūr's bad qualities.

170 Bal., Ans., vol. iii, p. 183.

171 Khaṭīb, Baghdād, vol. x, p. 400. Note that al-Manṣūr was not ordinarily interested in isnāds, which he dismissed as otiose ḥashāw (vol. x, p. 404).


175 Cf. Nagel, Rechtsleitung, esp. pp. 91ff. Nagel also wrongly conveys the impression
the *sunna* of the Prophet, the Companions or others, nor does he seem to have quoted Ḥadīth to his subjects. *Innamā anā sultan Allāh fī arḍīhi*, ‘I am simply the authority of God on His earth’, he said, echoing Umayyad statements to the same effect. To him, as to his Umayyad predecessors, obedience to God’s deputy on earth was the beginning and end of the matter.

It must be said that al-Manṣūr’s stance was surprisingly nonchalant, especially in view of the fact that he had been warned by Ibn al-Muqaffa’. In his *Risāla fī ʾl-ṣaḥāba* Ibn al-Muqaffa’ refers to the *kitāb* and *sunna* on several occasions, usually in tandem, but without leaving any doubt that both were now regarded as autonomous sources of law. *Sunna* is here something exemplified in *athar*, ‘traces’ or ‘past decisions’; more precisely, it is precedents attested for the Prophet or the *aʾimmāt al-hudā* after him (whoever they may be), as opposed to rulings by the Umayyads, whom Ibn al-Muqaffa’ dismisses as mere *āmirūs*. Now contrary to what one might have expected, Ibn al-Muqaffa’ was not worried by the fact that private

that the *sunna* in which al-Manṣūr was interested was Prophetic in the technical sense of the word. One *muḥaddith* did quote a Prophetic tradition to him (Bal., *Ans.*, vol. iii, p. 262), while another invoked the Prophet’s example (*ibid.*, p. 200): but neither Ibn Ṭahmān’s *sunan fī ʾl-fiqh* nor Ibn Jurayj’s collection of *ḥadīth* b. ‘Abbās necessarily went back to the Prophet (though Ibn Ṭahmān’s *Kitāb al-mashyakha* does contain a good deal of Prophetic Ḥadīth); and the *muwarrad* clothes were based on the authority of ‘Alī. Nagel also sees proof of al-Manṣūr’s esteem for the *sunna* in a line supposedly uttered by him on the death of the proto-Muʿtazilite ‘Amr b. ʿUbayd: ‘when men disputed about a *sunna*, he made the *ḥadīth* plain with wisdom and elegance’ (*Rechtleitung*, p. 100). But leaving aside the fact that this line is missing from the version of the poem given in the *Fihrist* (p. 203; contrast Ibn Qutayba, *ʿUyūn*, vol. i, p. 209). ‘Amr b. ʿUbayd is more likely to have been a Qurʿānic fundamentalist than a believer in the validity of Ḥadīth (and the *dāna biʾl-Qurʿān* of the poem has been mistranslated by Nagel); and *fassālaʾ ʾl-ḥadīth* presumably means no more than that he spoke clearly.

176 Tab., ser. iii, p. 426; Bal., *Ans.*, vol. iii, p. 268; *IQD*, vol. iv, p. 99, with special reference to the fact that in that capacity he was treasurer of God’s *māl* and *fay*.

177 Cf. Tab., ser. iii, p. 404. It is thus hard to accept the claim that ‘the main feature of [al-Manṣūr’s] policy was to establish “Orthodoxy” based on the Qurān and the *Sunna*’ (F. Omar, ‘Abbāsiyyāt, Baghdad 1976, p. 132).


180 Ibn al-Muqaffa’, *Risāla*, §§17, 37. In his glossary Pellat suggests that Ibn al-Muqaffa’ used the word *athar* to include both scriptural and non-scriptural precedent, and §17 could be taken to suggest this; but in §37 he speaks of *shayʿ maʾthūr min al-salaf*, which can scarcely include the Qurʾān. To translate *athar* by ‘disposition scriptuare’ as if it had *nothing* to do with tradition does seem a bit extreme.

scholars had engaged in the definition of the law: this he simply took for granted, yet another indication that the scholars had been active for some time. But he was alarmed by the failure of the caliph to intervene in their work. In the absence of caliphal control, he said, the law was both arbitrary and lacking in uniformity, which was true enough: a story set in Kufa about this time has a man receive three different answers to the same simple question from three different Kufan faqīhs. Accordingly, Ibn al-Muqaffa' said, the caliph should review these conflicting rules, draw up a code of the ones which he endorsed, forbid adjudication on the basis of the discarded ones, and leave it to his successors to revise the code from time to time. This would have restored to the caliph control over most of the law.

An early Andalusian source claims that al-Manṣūr commissioned the Muwatta', a short legal manual, from the Medinan jurist Mālik b. Anas, while other sources say that he (or al-Mahdī, or Hārūn) resolved to impose the Muwatta' on his Muslim subjects as the sole authoritative legal work, only to be dissuaded by Mālik on the ground that differing legal practices were too developed at the local level for such a measure to be politic or even feasible. A similar objection was raised by Mālik in a report in which al-Manṣūr is said to have told him, 'I should like to unify this 'ilm so that I can have it recorded and sent to the army commanders and judges in order that they [may] make themselves acquainted with it. He who later on acts contrary to it, I shall have him beheaded!': Mālik's response was that any attempt to divert people from their local ways of doing

182 Wāki', Qudāh, vol. iii, p. 46. The three legal experts were Abu Ḥanīfa, Ibn Shubruma and Ibn Abī Laylā.
183 Ibn al-Muqaffa', Risāla, §36.
185 al-Ṭabarī, al-Muntakhab min kitāb dhayl al-mudhayyal min ta'rikh al-sāḥība wa'l-tābi'īn in his Ta'rīkh, ser. iii, p. 2519 (Ibn Sa'd from al-Wāqīdī). In Ibrāhīm b. Ḥammād's report cited ibid. the caliph is al-Mahdī and the Muwatta' is not referred to by name. In al-Ghazālī, Ihya' 'ulūm al-din, Cairo 1282, vol. 1, p. 24, the caliph is Hārūn and Mālik invokes the Prophetic tradition ikhtīlāf al-umma rahma (cited by Goitein, Studies, p. 164n). Further examples are cited in A. Amīn, Duḥa 'l-īslām, vol. 1, Cairo 1933, pp. 210f. Schacht dismissed these reports as anecdotes (EL, s.v. 'Mālik b. Anas', col. 206b) expressing Muslim rejection of the same Persian idea of codification which he claimed to discern behind Ibn al-Muqaffa's advice ('Foreign Elements in Ancient Islamic Law', Journal of Comparative Legislation, third series, 32 (1950), parts iii and iv, p. 17; Mémoires de l'Académie Internationale de Droit Comparé 3 (1955), part iv, p. 140).
things would be regarded as *kufr*. Now if al-Manṣūr did commission or select the *Muwatta*' as a first step in following the advice of Ibn al-Muqaffa', then the choice was a poor one: Mālik was no substitute for a panel of jurists such as that brought together by Justinian for the codification of Roman law (a point which Mālik himself in effect makes in the reports just referred to); and in practice, and for whatever reason, neither al-Manṣūr nor his successors implemented the advice by promulgating a sole authoritative code of the realm. The possibility that al-Manṣūr felt too insecure in his power for so momentous an undertaking is not inconsistent with Mālik's reported view that it would be seen as *kufr*. It may also be that he simply did not realise that his power was being undermined, though it should be noted that Ibn al-Muqaffa' was not the only person to give warnings of danger: thus Mūsā b. Ṭsā al-Kisrawī, a contemporary of Ibn al-Muqaffa', wrote a book 'on the inconsistencies of those who maintain that *qādis* do not have to abide by the instructions of the imams and caliphs in their performance of their official duties'. Whatever the truth of the matter, the newly developed concept of *sunna* scarcely impinged on his conduct of public affairs.

Given its importance to al-Manṣūr as a cultural phenomenon and to Ibn al-Muqaffa' as a political one, it is not however surprising that the new concept of *sunna* went public under al-Manṣūr's son and successor, al-Mahdī. According to the vizier Abū 'Ubaydallāh, God had made al-Mahdī 'the one who conducts the affairs of His servants and His lands, and the bringer to life of His *sunan*'; in a verse by Marwān b. Abī Ḥaṣṭa, it is the Prophet's *sunna* rather than God's *sunan* that al-Mahdī revives; and in the estimation of Mu'arrij al-Sadūsī, it was al-Mahdī's own *sunan* which were worthy of fame.

187 Note particularly al-Ṭabarī, *Muntakhab*, p. 2519, where Mālik says that he has done his best in the Maghrib, while al-Shām has had al-Awzā‘ī, and as for the people of Iraq, *fa-hum ahl al-‘Irāq*.
188 As suggested by Crone, *Slaves on Horses*, p. 70.
189 Kitāb munāqadāt man za‘ama an lā yانbaghiya an yaqtadiya ‘l-gudāhī ma‘tā‘imihim bi‘l-a‘imma wa‘l-khulafā‘, *Fihrist*, p. 142; first adduced by Schacht, ‘Classicisme’, p. 159n; compare *Iqd*, vol. i, p. 98--9 where ‘Umar II says that *iqtidā‘ bi‘l-a‘imma is one of the qualities necessary in a perfect qaḍī.
191 Aghānī, vol. x, p. 89. Goldziher was of the opinion that this poem could not have been dedicated to any Umayyad, except ‘Umar II (Muslim Studies, vol. ii, p. 56); we must beg to differ.
192 Above, chapter 4, note 68; the examples given specify his *radd al-maẓālim* and his allocation of various kinds of stipend.
All this is very much in keeping with the Umayyad way of speaking: God's *sunna* is that represented by His Prophet and perpetuated by His caliph, *sunna* meaning little more than what is right. But the Umayyads had not been in the habit of speaking quite so much about *sunna* as were the 'Abbāsids, and al-Mahdī himself made it clear that he envisaged Prophetic *sunna*, at least in part, as something exemplified in Ḥadīth: in a letter dated 159, composed by the vizier Abū 'Ubaydallāh and concerned with the descendants of Ziyād b. Abīhi, he secured for himself the distinction of being the first 'Abbāsid caliph on record as having cited Prophetic tradition in a public statement. In adopting Ziyād b. Abīhi as his brother, he said, Mu'āwiya had contravened the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet and failed to observe a *sunna* ḥādiyya and *qudwa* mādiyya coming from the imams of truth (a highly charged term which here seems to designate those who had transmitted the precedents in question), namely the Prophetic rule that the child belongs to the marriage bed and the Prophetic prohibition of fictitious kinship ties; both traditions are cited in full, though without *isnāds*. In the following year al-Mahdī once more cited Prophetic *ḥadīth* in a public letter, this time one addressed to the Khārijite 'Abd al-Salām al-Yashkuri: in withdrawing his obedience from the caliph and in slandering 'Ālī, he said, 'Abd al-Salām had disobeyed God and His Prophet, there being a *yaqīn rādiʿ* wa-ḥadīth šādiq from the Prophet stating that 'everyone whose master I am has 'Ālī as his master too'. We leave aside what particular motives al-Mahdī may have had for according so emphatic a public recognition to the *sunna* which his father had cultivated on the side: We take it that if al-Mahdī had not done so, one or the other of his successors would soon have done something similar.

Al-Mahdī having taken the lead, however, Hārūn certainly followed suit. This caliph appointed as his chief *qāḍī* (apparently the first of the kind) the Ḥanafī Abū Yūsuf, a scholar who composed for him the famous work in which the *sunna* on taxation is illustrated with reference to some 300 traditions going back to various early figures,

---

193 Tab., ser. iii, pp. 479ff.
196 This question was discussed by M. Hinds in 'The Early 'Abbāsid Caliphs and Sunna', a paper presented at the colloquium on the study of Ḥadīth, Oxford 1982; Hinds hopes to publish the relevant part in modified form elsewhere.
including the Prophet, that is the *Kitāb al-kharāj*. And fuqahāʾ now seem to have formed a regular cadre of the state apparatus, in which capacity their duties included accompanying the caliph on pilgrimage and witnessing the signing of important documents, as well as answering such queries from qādīs as the caliph continued to receive; apparently, they even had their own uniform. In his letter of appointment to Harthama b. Aʿyan, governor of Khurāsān, Hārūn stated that Harthama should make the book of God his guide in everything he did; if in doubt, he should consult the local experts in God’s book and the *fiqh* of God’s religion, or alternatively refer the matter to his imam, that is Hārūn himself, so that God might show the latter His opinion. In other words, legal experts who had made their appearance outside the state apparatus now took precedence over the God-inspired state itself. In the last year of his reign Hārūn corresponded with Ḥamza al-Khārijī, a colourful rebel in Sīstān whom he called to the book of God and the *sunna* of the Prophet in the traditional fashion. Ḥamza responded by pointing to the book of God and His (sc. God’s) *sunan*; Ḥamza was a Qurʾānic fundamentalist, to whom guidance was incarnate partly in the frozen form of a book and partly in the ongoing form of the ‘way of those guided by God in their hearts’. Ḥamza thus subscribed to the old doctrine that guidance was available here and now (except that it was not available from caliphs in his view). Hārūn, by contrast, made it plain that *sunan hādiya* which the Prophet had

197 Abū Yūsuf’s attitude to Ḥadīth as a source of law in this work is discussed by A. Ben Shemesh, *Taxation in Islam*, vol. iii, Leiden and London 1969, pp. 1ff., who does however exaggerate the number of traditions in question (see the index in the edition by I. ‘Abbas).

198 They witnessed the document of *amān* for the Ḥasanid Yahyā b. ‘Abdallāh in 176 together with judges and Ḥāshimites (Tab., ser. iii, p. 614; cf. also *Kitāb al-ʿuyūn*, p. 293). They took part in the drawing up and witnessing of the solemn documents of succession during the pilgrimage of 186, again together with judges and others (Tab., ser. iii, pp. 654; *Kitāb al-ʿuyūn*, p. 304). Every time al-Rashīd went on pilgrimage he was accompanied by a hundred fuqahāʾ and their sons (Tab., ser. iii, p. 741).


201 Tab., ser. iii, p. 717.

202 Li-yuriyahu Allāh ʿazza wa-jalla raʿyahu.

203 Scarcia, ‘Scambio’, p. 634.

204 Scarcia, ‘Scambio’, p. 636; cf. above, note 34.

205 Sabīl man hadā ʾllāh qalbahum (Scarcia, ‘Scambio’, p. 636; we are indebted to Zimmermann, ‘Koran and Tradition’, note 140, for our understanding of Ḥamza’s position).
made clear were to be found in Ḥadīth from him and other figures of the past. In this interchange 'Abbāsid history has come full circle: an 'Abbāsid is here calling to the book of God and the sunna of the Prophet in the sense of something authenticated by Ḥadīth, whereas the rebel speaks the language which the 'Abbāsids themselves had spoken in the past.

From Hārūn onwards, references to the sunna of the Prophet in its classical sense become commonplace in 'Abbāsid statements, and this is scarcely surprising. By 767 the classical account of the Prophet's life, Ibn Ishāq's Maghāzī, had been written, while at the same time the classical schools of law were under formation: Abū Ḥanīfa died in 150/767, Mālik in 179/795, and by the reign of al-Ma'mūn, al-Shāfī'ī had formulated his jurisprudential doctrine. Given that the 'Abbāsids had failed to control all this, they had to toe the line.

It might be argued that they could toe the line with impunity until al-Shāfī'ī's doctrines had won acceptance. It is plain that pre-Shāfī'ite sunna was what Schacht called 'living sunna' rather than a dead one, that is to say it was the putative practice of the Prophet as continued by later generations rather than one sealed in the lifetime of the Prophet himself. Sunna was defined by the Prophet and later a'immat al-hudā/qawm ṣāliḥūn, as Ibn al-Muqaffa' and Abū Yūsuf said, and a great deal of it was still sunna in the sense of being ra'y rashīd. In principle the imams of guidance/righteous people could well have continued to include 'Abbāsid caliphs on a par with scholars, and the 'Abbāsids could thus have continued to be seen as following the sunna of their pious forebears all while establishing their own very

206 Cf. Zimmermann, 'Koran and Tradition', note 140. In his comments on the paper by Hinds at the colloquium for the study of Ḥadīth, Oxford 1982, Zimmermann pointed out that since Ḥamza's letter is a line-by-line riposte to Hārūn's his rejection of sunna as authenticated by Ḥadīth suggests that Hārūn subscribed to it, and that Hārūn in fact refers to a Ḥadīth in this letter, however implicitly. Hārūn invokes the Qur'ānic statement that obedience to the Prophet equals obedience to God (Qur. 4: 81), continues by referring to God's book and the sunan hādiya which Muhammad had made clear, and concludes by inviting Ḥamza to obey the book of God and the sunna of His messenger by obeying the caliph. This presupposes that obedience to the caliph equalled obedience to the Prophet, and thus also to God, suggesting that Hārūn had in mind the tradition cited by Abū Yūsuf to the effect that he who obeys the imam obeys the Prophet (Kharāj, p. 80).


208 Cf. above, notes 161, 181.
much as the Umayyads had done: it was only with al-Shāfi‘ī that *sunna* ceased to be something which could be made here and now.

In practice, however, this argument is not correct. On the one hand, living *sunna* was not very alive, or rather it was only alive to scholars. Whoever Ibn al-Muqaffa"’s *a‘immat al-hudā* may have been,208 Abū Yūsuf's *qawm śāliḥūn* included no caliph later than 'Umar II, while the last caliph to be cited as an authority on law in the *Muṣannaf* of 'Abd al-Razzāq (d. 211/826) is Hishām.210 No ‘Abbāsid caliph is invoked as an authority in legal Ḥadīth, the incomparable nature of al-Mahdī’s *sunan* notwithstanding.211 The fact that the Umayyads had to be expunged from the record (with the exception of ‘Uthmān and ‘Umar II) was bad for such sense of caliphal law as survived: in principle the ‘Abbāsids could have made living *sunna*, but in practice the canon of caliphal law had been closed. It was only scholars such as Abū Ḥanīfa or the aptly named Rabī‘at al-Ra‘y who were still in a position to institute *sunan*, and for such scholars al-Shāfi‘ī’s theories were indeed a threat. But for the caliphs, they did not make much difference.

On the other hand, even living *sunna* was very detailed. It was easy enough for the Umayyads to follow the *sunna* of David, Solomon, the Prophet or past caliphs, given that the *sunan* in question rarely had much concrete existence; it was an altogether different matter to follow or restore the *sunna* of the Prophet and the early caliphs once Ḥadīth had got underway. Having been deprived of the authority to institute new *sunan*, the ‘Abbāsid caliphs also found that the past which they were supposed to imitate consisted of narrowly defined rules, not of vague ancestral practice compatible with any interpretation which they might wish to put on it. In practice, their hands had thus been tied.

To this must be added the point mentioned already, viz. that since Prophetic *sunna* was defined in the main by private scholars rather than by public servants, its rules were frequently and indeed intentionally unhelpful to the state. This is not to say that the scholars

209 Presumably the only non-‘Abbāsid caliph recognised as legitimate by the ‘Abbāsids at this stage was ‘Aılı, suggesting that the *a‘imma* included persons other than caliphs, e.g. worthy forebears of the dynasty such as Ibn ‘Abbās. But here as elsewhere in the *Risāla*, Ibn al-Muqaffa‘ is prudently vague.


211 The nearest we get to it is Kindi, *Governors*, p. 370, where Ibn Lahi‘a, an Egyptian judge, says that al-Manṣūr wrote to him saying *annahu lā yajazu yujawwizu lil-hāmil şadqa‘*ān ‘alā wārit (sic). However this is to be understood, it clearly represents the Commander of the Faithful as an authority of law; but no Ḥadīth collection saw fit to include it.
advocated disobedience to the caliph; on the contrary, Ḥadīth is quietist. But though the subjects had to obey the caliph, the caliph in his turn had to abide by rules which in matters such as taxation, penal law, the fixing of prices and the like committed him to a policy very different from what he might otherwise have had in mind: humane though it is, Abū Yūsuf’s Kitāb al-kharāj could scarcely be recommended as a rational approach to the problem of taxation. Naturally the caliph could ignore the sunna and he frequently did; but what is a deputy of God who is forced to contravene God’s law?

The scholarly conception of Prophetic sunna was thus a threat to caliphal authority from the moment of its appearance. The only way in which the caliphs could have survived with such a law would have been by reserving the right to act as its ultimate arbiters, or in other words by selecting from the works of the scholars such rules as they wished to recognise, depriving the rest of validity, very much as Ibn al-Muqaffa’ had suggested. Though al-Manṣūr did not apparently respond to his proposal, there are suggestions that both he and other caliphs saw themselves as arbiters of this kind not so much as caliphs, but rather as kinsmen of the Prophet (a quality which the Umayyad caliphs had conveniently lacked). As has been seen, al-Manṣūr displayed a special interest in Ḥadīth transmitted to and from Hāshimites. Al-Mahdi explained that in his capacity as kinsman of the Prophet he had restored the sunna ignored by Muʿāwiya; on another occasion he settled a question concerning the sunna of moustaches with reference to a tradition going back, via his father and grandfather, to Ibn ‘Abbās. Similarly al-Ma’mūn explained that of all people who followed the sunna of the Prophet he was the best equipped to act in accordance with it, partly because of his position in God’s religion [sc. his being khalifat Allāh], partly because of his succession to Muḥammad [sc. his being khalifat rasūl Allāh] and partly because of his kinship with the Prophet. But though the ‘Abbāsids would assert their special position vis-à-vis the sunna in connection with this or that policy of theirs, they never claimed to have ultimate control of the law as such, nor could they have done so without reclaiming the entirety of spiritual authority once vested in the caliphate. The law was the sum total of God’s guidance, not merely matters of relevance to courts, for all that Ibn al-Muqaffa’ only considered it as such in his Risāla: it dealt with every aspect of

---

212 Cf. above, note 193.
life from taxation to the proper way of wearing moustaches. What the 'Abbāsids might or might not choose to make valid law in the sense of law enforceable at court was a minor issue, given that the hallmark of the law was truth irrespective of whether it had power on its side or not; the issue was whether the caliph was the ultimate arbiter of what was valid law in the eyes of God. Until al-Ma'mūn every 'Abbāsid caliph shied away from declaring that he was; and without control of the law the 'Abbāsid claim to be guides of the community was worthless.

At the same time, the scholars studiously avoided paying attention to the 'Abbāsid suggestion that kinsmen of the Prophet might enjoy a favoured position vis-à-vis the sunna. The ultimate arbiter in their view was ijmāʿ, consensus, be it that of the scholars themselves or the local community. Thus 'Ubaydallāh al-Anbārī told al-Mahdī that aḥkām should be decided with reference to the book of God, followed by the sunna of the messenger of God; failing that, with reference to what the aʿimmāt al-fuqahāʾ had agreed; and failing that, by ijtīhād of the governor in consultation with the ahl al-ʿilm.215 There is no room for caliphal decisions here. To al-Shāfiʿī the ultimate arbiter was the consensus of the entire community: the caliph counted only in so far as every member of the umma did.216 If al-Maʾmūn had not sensed where things were going, al-Shāfiʿī spelt this out for him in no uncertain terms: the caliph was a mere executor of the law chosen by the community. But al-Shāfiʿī's views were simply nails in the caliphal coffin.

In terms of the danger posed by the scholarly concept of Prophetic sunna to caliphal authority, an outright confrontation between caliph and 'ulamāʾ had thus been on the cards long before al-Maʾmūn; at the same time the 'Abbāsid propensity for toeing the line meant that it might have been avoided altogether. The fact that a confrontation did occur, and that it did so under al-Maʾmūn, had more to do with the corrosive effect of the fourth civil war on 'Abbāsid claims to legitimacy than it did with al-Shāfiʿī's thoughts;217 the very fact that al-Maʾmūn chose to force the issue over a question of creed rather than of law militates against the assumption that recent developments in legal theory provoked the conflict. But the fact that the 'ulamāʾ had managed to produce even al-Shāfiʿī before the collision came evidently meant that al-Maʾmūn's chances of winning were slim.

216 Cf. El², s.v. 'idjmāʿ'.
217 Cf. Crone, Slaves on Horses, pp. 76f.
On the face of it al-Ma'mūn sought his resources for a restoration of caliphal authority in Shi'ism, first by designating the eighth imam of the Imāmī Shi'ites as his successor, and next by assuming for himself the prerogatives of this imam, displaying the religious authority which he had won thereby in the institution of the mihna. But though the erosion of the original concept of the caliphate within mainstream Islam on the one hand and the Hāshimite descent of the 'Abbāsids on the other both predisposed al-Ma'mūn to seek a Shi'ite aegis for his ventures, it was in fact an Umayyad caliphate which he tried to restore (just as it was an Umayyad Dome of the Rock which he tried to claim for himself in Jerusalem).

It may admittedly be argued that his designation of 'Alī al-Riḍā had little or nothing to do with his concept of caliphal authority: a recently uncovered document claims that he nominated the 'Alid in the belief that the end of the world was at hand. If this is accepted, there is no question of regarding his choice of al-Riḍā and his institution of the mihna as two different strategies towards the same objective of regaining religious authority for the caliphate. In return his choice of al-Riḍā would highlight the threadbare nature of 'Abbāsid legitimacy after the fourth civil war: for if the caliph thought that he could only avert wholesale massacre of his kinsmen on the day of judgement by handing over to an 'Aiid, then the caliph himself had evidently stopped believing that the 'Abbāsids had a right to rule. Loss of legitimacy and loss of religious authority went hand in hand under the Umayyads and the 'Abbāsids alike: the designation of al-Riḍā might be a reaction primarily to the former, the institution of the mihna primarily to the latter. But there is reason to be sceptical about this claim, for it was precisely in connection with the designation of al-Riḍā that Umayyad concepts of the caliphate resurfaced. Thus the title of khalīfāt Allāh returned to the coinage, its first reappearance there being on coins issued in al-Riḍā's name; and the message behind this come-back can hardly have been other than that the title was now meant to be taken as seriously as it had been in the days of 'Abd al-Malik: Muḥammad rasūl Allāh, al-Ma'mūn khalīfāt Allāh, as the inscriptions proclaim, neatly restoring the old parity between

---


219 Madelung, 'New Documents', pp. 343ff.
messenger and deputy. This letter, of which we offer a translation in appendix 4, is so close to that of al-Walid II in terms of both structure and terminology that one suspects that it was directly modelled thereon (and al-Walid II is in fact known to have sent a copy of his to Khurāsān). Like al-Walid II, al-Ma'mūn begins with a review of sacred history divided into an era of prophets and another of caliphs. The era of prophets began when God chose Islam as His own religion and sent messengers with it until in due course the prophethood reached Muḥammad, who here as in al-Walid’s letter preaches the same as all the previous prophets and completes God’s message to mankind. The era of the caliphs began when, on Muḥammad’s death, God set up the caliphate for the maintenance of His farā'id and hudūd and the sharā'i' and sunan of Islam, as well as for the conduct of jihād. As in al-Walid’s letter this is followed by a section stressing the importance of obedience to God’s khalīfa, though al-Ma'mūn has less to say about this than does al-Walid and, unlike him, also refers to the caliph’s responsibilities in respect of his subjects. Here as there the caliphate is something which brings together the disunited, while the covenant of succession is a refuge and part of the completion of Islam. Both caliphs stress that they have had no greater preoccupation than the succession since their accession, and both conclude with a paragraph on the benefits which will arise from giving allegiance. Leaving aside Qur'ānic citations not used by al-Walid and the circumstantial detail regarding al-Riḍā and the ‘Abbāsid retinue, al-Ma’mūn’s letter differs significantly from that of al-Walid only in that it refers to the kitāb/kitāb Allāh and sunna/sunnat nabiyyihi, as well as to the sunan of Islam, where al-Walid speaks only of the sunna of God, and further in that it cites a tradition, more precisely a Companion tradition (from ‘Umar I) on the responsibility of caliphs for their subjects. The message is otherwise precisely the same as that of al-Walid: it is through the caliphs that God’s ordinances are maintained. The letter

---

220 Cf. above, chapter 2, note 26. According to Shaban, Islamic History, vol. II, p. 47, al-Ma'mūn gave the caliphal title 'a twist to signify that the ruler was God's deputy on earth, instead of the simple earlier meaning of successor' in order to give his authority 'greater semblance of religious function'. But al-Ma'mūn did not twist the title, and his use of it was clearly far more programmatic than Shaban suggests: whatever interpretation one adopts of his religious policy, he certainly did not intend simply to beautify the caliphate with some religious cosmetics.

221 Cf. appendix 2, p. 117.
thus amounts to a restoration of the Umayyad concept of the caliphate rather than to preparation for the end of the world.

The failure of the experiment with al-Ridā notwithstanding, al-Ma'mūn remained faithful to this concept. The caliph observes God's book and protects the legacy of the prophets (once more in the plural), as well as the ḥarīm al-dīn, as we are told by al-Ma'mūn's secretary, once more in terms reminiscent of al-Walid's; he is al-qaʿim bi-ḥaqqīhi, the one who undertakes God's right'. And al-Ma'mūn reaffirmed this point on his institution of the miḥna. 'God has made it incumbent upon the imams of the Muslims, their caliphs, to strive for the maintenance of the religion of God with which He has entrusted them, the heritage of prophethood of which He has made them legatees, and the transmission of knowledge which He has committed to their care... ', he said, this time spelling out the implications thereof in no uncertain terms: ' the Commander of the Faithful knows that the great multitudes, the mass of insignificant folk and vulgar public who in all regions and countries are without insight and deep reflection... are people ignorant of God and too blind to see Him... because of the weakness of their views, the deficiency of their understanding and their turning aside from reflection and recollection'. Through the miḥna al-Ma'mūn thus intended to resume the old caliphal role of curing spiritual blindness. But the miḥna was a failure too. Ibn Abī Duʿād was no substitute for al-Farazdaq, and the vulgar masses did not want the cure: under the leadership of Ibn Ḥanbal they rejected caliphal guidance in religious matters once and for all.

Epilogue

When al-Mutawakkil abolished the *miḥna* in 234/848f he formally acknowledged what had been pretty obvious for some time, viz. that al-ma‘mūn’s attempt to enforce the role of the caliph as guide in spiritual matters had been a failure. Henceforth the caliph had to satisfy himself with political power, and the textbook view of the nature of the caliphate is substantially correct from this point onwards. It should be stressed, however, that the desanctification of the institution was never complete. A caliph such as al-Mu‘taṣīm may well have looked like a purely political ruler to Ibn Ḥanbal, but one stripped of his political power such as al-Mustakfī nonetheless looked like a purely religious one to al-Bīrūnī.1 And it came easily to al-Ghazālī to recharge the caliphate with religious significance in the face of the Bāṭṭīni challenge.2 There is no point in Islamic history at which the caliphate can be said to have been entirely devoid of religious meaning. It is for this reason that it was retained for centuries after it had lost political relevance and was restored by Mamluks and Ottomans after the Mongols had destroyed it. When ‘Alī ʿAbd al-Rāziq published a work in 1925 arguing that the caliphate had been of a secular nature from the start, the *shaykhs* of al-Azhar duly responded with an emphatic condemnation of his views.3


2 Cf. above, chapter 3, note 50.

Even so, it was now the 'ulamā’ who were the heirs of the prophets, as stated in a famous tradition with which the shaykhs of Al-Azhar are unlikely to disagree. Accordingly, the 'ulamā’ now came to be known as imams too; indeed, they would seem to have begun their usurpation of this title already in the caliphate of al-Mahdī. In a provocative letter to that caliph, a Basran judge by the name of 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Ḥasan al-'Anbarī enumerates prophets, caliphs and the imams, the fuqahā’ among the people whom God has deputed over his servants (wa’stikhliifihi minhum anbiyi’ahu warusulahu al-mursalin wa’l-khulafā’ al-rāshidīn wa’l-a’imma al-fuqahā’), describing all such persons as al-hudāt al-muhtadūn and al-a’imma al-qā’idūn with reference to their maintenance of nūr al-kitāb and throwing in the expression al-a’imma al-fuqahā’ elsewhere in the letter too. 'Ubaydallāh was himself described as an imām ‘adā’tn by a poet; and even al-Mahdī seems to have used the expression a’immat al-haqq to refer to, or at least to include, scholars. From this it was but a short step to the custom of regularly prefixing the names of great scholars with the title of imam, as in al-imām al-Shāfi‘ī, a public proclamation of where right guidance was to be found. The title of khalīfa came close to undergoing the same evolution. Thus 'Ubaydallāh al-Anbari describes the people deputed by God over His servants as ‘the scholars, the caliphs to whom one holds fast and who are protected [against error]’ (al-‘ulamā’ al-khulafā’ al-mu’tasam bihim wa’l-mašūmūn). Nu’aym b. Ḥammād (d. 227/842) had heard authorities say that ‘whoever enjoins good and prohibits evil, he is the khalīfa of God on earth, and the khalīfa of His book, and the khalīfa of the Messenger of God’, a tradition also known to the Zaydi al-Hādī. And the Prophet himself defines his khulafā’ as those who are imams and jurists, or 'ulamā’ and shaykhs, or even one who is just a learned people, themselves being the ‘ulamā’ who are theROSSENTHAL, 'Some Reflections on the Separation of Religion and Politics in Modern Islam', Islamic Studies 3 (1964), pp. 266ff.; Nagel, Rechtleitung, pp. 14ff.

4 *Inna l-‘ulamā’ warathat al-anbiyā’, cf. the references given in Wensinck, Concordance, vol. iv, p. 321, s.v. ‘ālim’.

5 Wākī’, *Qudāḥ*, vol. ii, pp. 97f., reading qā’idūn for ‘ā’idūn.

6 Wākī’, *Qudāḥ*, vol. ii, p. 101. By contrast the a’imma mentioned at the beginning of the letter, p. 97, could well be or include caliphs.

7 Wākī’, *Qudāḥ*, vol. ii, p. 121; compare *ibid.*, vol. iii, p. 140, where Ibn Abī Laylā appears as amin Allāh.

8 Cf. above, chapter 5, p. 88.

9 After all, the word imam refers to somebody whose example should be imitated (cf. E. W. Lane, *An Arabic-English Lexicon*, London 1863–93, s.v.).

10 Wākī’, *Qudāḥ*, vol. ii, p. 98.

11 Nu’aym b. Ḥammād, *Fitan*, fol. 22b (we owe this reference to Michael Cook).

who transmit his traditions and his sunna, teaching them to the people, in a Ḥadīth familiar to Sunnis and Shiʿites alike. 13 But the caliphal title was apparently too closely associated with political power for this evolution to be completed.

In the case of the heretics, however, there was nothing in al-Maʿmūn’s failure to force them to change their views on the caliphate; or rather there was nothing therein to force them to change their theoretical stance regarding this institution. In practice the caliphate ceased to matter much to the majority of Sunnis and Shiʿites alike. The Sunnis having stripped the head of state of his religious authority, the Shiʿites lost such real interest in replacing him with an imam of their own as they had managed to retain so far, devoting themselves to the elaboration of their own law and doctrine instead; only utopianists such as the Ismāʿīlīs refused to concede that political power and religious authority had parted company for good. But in principle the imam of the Imāmis and their Ismāʿīlī offshoot alike remained both head of state and spiritual fountainhead. That the Imāmī conception of the caliphate should be seen as an archaism rather than an innovation has been suggested already, and the case for this view may now be summarised as follows.

First, the Imāmīs and Ismāʿīlīs identify the legitimate head of state as deputy of God on earth. 14 They also identify him as the Prophet’s successor: like the ‘Abbāsid caliph, the imam is khalīfa lī’l-lāh ta‘ālā fī khalīqatihi wa-li-rasūlihi fī ummatihi, 15 and given the descent of the imams from the Prophet, this is as one might expect. Both sects generally prefer the title of imam to that of khalīfa, possibly because the deputy of God is Qur’ānically associated with bloodshed, and thus fallibility, 16 but undoubtedly also because he is historically...

---

14 Cf. the references given above, chapter 2, notes 57, 59–62.
15 Ahmad b. Yaʿqūb, Risāla, fol. 86v. Compare above chapter 2, p. 16 (Hārūn); notes 53 (al-Mutawakkil), and 58, 59 (other Imāmī and Ismāʿīlī examples of the imam as the Prophet’s successor).
16 This was certainly an embarrassment to Shiʿite no less than Sunni exegetes (cf. above, chapter 2, note 5). Thus al-Ṭūsī finds it necessary to stress that the angelic comment regarding bloodshed does not refer to the behaviour of prophets and infallible imams, but rather to that of the rest of mankind, mankind being the khalīfa (successor) announced by God in this verse (al-Ṭūsī, al-Tibyān fī tafsīr al-Qur’ān, ed. A. H. Qāṣīr al-ʿĀmilī and A. Sh. al-Amīn, Najaf 1957–63, vol. 11, pp. 131, 134, ad 2:28); alternatively, the angels were referring to the behaviour of the jinn who had previously occupied the earth (ibid., p. 132; similarly al-Qummi, Tafsīr, ed. T. al-Muṣawwī al-Jazāʿīrī, Najaf 1386–7, vol. 1, pp. 36f., where the khalīfa is however resolutely identified as God’s hujja on earth).
associated with real control of the entire Muslim world. Just as no separatist ruler could be a caliph, so a purely theoretical ruler could only aspire to be one; when the Fāṭimids officially proclaimed themselves caliphs, it was precisely with a view to bringing the entire Muslim world under their sway. But however this may be, the point of significance here is that both sects apply to their own rulers a title first securely attested for 'Uthmān. Clearly, they took over this title as Muslim Gemeingut.

Secondly, the imams of the Imāmīs and Ismā'īlīs are intrinsic to the attainment of salvation. Like the Umayyad and early ‘Abbāsid caliphs they are a'immat al-hudā and imams of justice who guide people away from perdition, God guiding people through them, and like them, they are and/or maintain the waymarks and beacons of truth and guidance, being light, shining suns, guiding stars,

17 Just as ‘Aīly is the only amīr al-mu'mīnīn in Imāmī literature, so he tends to be the only khalīfa. In principle all twelve imams were caliphs: the Prophet himself predicted that there would be twelve caliphs after him ( Ibn Shahrāshūb, Manāqib, vol. 1, pp. 251f.). But in practice this is forgotten, for we are also told that there have only been four caliphs on earth, Adam, David, Aaron and ‘Aīly: those who deny that ‘Aīly is the fourth are in for a nasty surprise on the day of judgement when it is announced that ‘Aīly is khalīfat Allāh fi ardihi ( ibid., vol. II, pp. 261f.).

18 Khārijite or Zaydī breakaways never adopted the caliphal title, be it because they rejected it altogether or because they felt it would have been nonsensical; it was clearly because it would have been nonsensical that the Spanish Umayyads initially failed to do so: the Fāṭimids had to devalue the title before they adopted it, and it was felt to be an empty one even after they had done so (cf. F. Gabrieli, ‘Omayyades d'Espagne et Abbasides’, Studia Islamica 31 (1970), pp. 98ff.; and note the absence of caliphal faint!ance here). Admittedly, it was felt to be an empty one primarily because the Spanish Umayyads did not control the holy places rather than because they did not control the entire Muslim world; conversely, it was control of these places rather than world dominion which gave the Ottoman caliphate a certain plausibility, just as it is control of the same places which gives the Sa'ūdī monarchs a quasi-caliphal role today (as noted by M. Ruthven, Islam in the World, Harmondsworth 1984, p. 30). But leaving aside the fact that this is likely to be a secondary development, the imams of the Imāmīs were not rulers anywhere at all: they merely resided in Medina.

19 On a par with the title amīr al-mu'mīnīn, said first to have been adopted by 'Umar. See for example Kulaynī, Kāfī, vol. I, pp. 196, 203, 208, 376; Mu'ayyad, Diwān, no. 2: 125 and passim; Tyan, Sultanat, p. 515n.


lamps and the like, which dispel darkness and make the blind see. They are pillars of the religion, rain (gayth) and life to mankind; they heal; they are the rope of God to which one should cling and a refuge for His servants. The imam is God's trustee (amin Allāh) and somebody who stands between God and His creation. Whoever dies without allegiance to such an imam dies a Jihili death according to Shi'ite no less than Sunni without faith in the imams one does not count as a believer. ‘He who does not hold fast to God's trustee will not benefit from the five prayers’ is a line which, though originally addressed to Hārūn al-Rashid, appears in Imāmi literature on ‘Ali too.

Thirdly, the imam of the Imāmis and Ismā‘īlīs occupies the same role vis-à-vis the law as did the Umayyad caliph.


27 Mu‘ayyad, Diwān, no. 1:152.

28 For particularly striking passages illustrating this point, see Kulaynī, Kāfī, vol. 2, pp. 182, 208; Ḥāmid b. Ya‘qūb, Risāla, fols. 84r.–85r.


31 Kulaynī, Kāfī, vol. 1, p. 204.

32 Kumayt, pp. 3, 4 = 3, 4 (no. 1:9, 11); Mu‘ayyad, Diwān, no. 37:43).

33 Cf. Ibn Shahrāshūb, Manāqib, vol. II, pp. 273ff., where several traditions identifying the imams as ḥabl Allāh and al-‘urwa al-wuthqā are brought together.

34 Kulaynī, Kāfī, vol. 1, p. 200 (ma‘ṣa‘d il‘l-ibād); compare Kumayt, p. 3 = 3 (no. 1:7), where they are a ma‘ṣā‘a for the guardians of orphans; Ibn Bābūya, Ma‘ānī, p. 371, where walāyay ‘Āli is ḥṣīn Allāh; Mu‘ayyad, Diwān, no. 2:125, where they are ‘isma man lāda bihim min al-rādā‘; compare also nos. 4:22; 36:5; 59:42.


36 Yaqūmu maqām Allāh bayna ‘l-bādīhī, as al-Mu‘ayyad put it (Diwān, n. 37:25). But there does not appear to be any Umayyad precedent for the term ḥuṣa‘; and the well known Imāmī and Ismā‘īlī notion that God never leaves mankind without a ḥujjā (i.e., a prophet or an imam) is only implicit in the Umayyad material.


39 Ibn Shahrāshūb, Manāqib, vol. 1, p. 257, where it is cited as from an anonymous poet (wa-qāla shā‘ir ‘akhār) in a section on Ghadir Khumm. For its authorship and original context, see chapter 3, note 49.
known what is forbidden and what is allowed’; \(^{40}\) he ‘allows what
God has allowed, forbids what God had forbidden, maintains God’s
\(hudūd\) and defends God’s religion’, \(^{41}\) and in him is ‘the completion
of the prayer, \(zakāt\), fasting, pilgrimage and \(jihād\), the augmentation
of the booty and the alms taxes, the execution of the \(hudūd\) and
\(aḥkām\), and the defence of the borders and outlying areas’. \(^{42}\) In
Imāmī and Ismā’īlī Ḥadith it is the imams who appear as authorities
just as it is Umayyad caliphs who appear as such elsewhere. \(^{43}\) Jarīr’s
‘were it not for the caliph and the book he recites, people 
would have no judgements established for them, and no communal worship’
so utterly Shi‘ite in sentiment that the Shi‘ites could have claimed
him as one of their own if all his most Shi‘ite sounding poetry had
not been uttered in praise of Umayyads.

Finally, the imam of the Imāmīs and Ismā‘īlīs is distinguished from
the rest of mankind in various ways also attested for the Umayyads.
Thus he is superior to all other people, ranking below prophets
only. \(^{44}\) The Umayyads wrongly claim such superiority, al-Kumayt
says, just as they wrongly claim to have inherited the power which
they have in fact usurped. \(^{45}\) Like the Umayyad caliph, he is rightly
guided. Thus ‘Abū \(al-imām\ \(al-hādī\ \(al-rashīd\)’ and \(imāmunā\ \(al-mahdī\).
He was \(hādiyyan\ \(mahdiyyan\), \(^{48}\) an expression also used in
a satirical vein of al-Ḥusayn, \(^{49}\) who was \(al-mahdī\ \(ibn\ \(al-mahdī\) to his

\(^{40}\) Kulaynī, \(Kāfī\), vol. i, p. 178; cf. Kumayt, p. 11 = 9 (no. 1:34, where they are
\(muhīlūn\ wa-\(muhīrimūn\), and the poem in Ibn Sharāshūb, \(Manāqīb\), vol. iii, p. 275
(\(ilaykum\ \(al-tāhirīn\ wa’l-tāhīf\).

\(^{41}\) Kulaynī, \(Kāfī\), vol. i, p. 200; cf. Ibn Babūya, \(Ma‘ānī\, p. 133 (\(inna\ \(‘l-lāh\ . . . farāda
‘alayhi ‘iṣāmat\ al-\(hudūd\).

\(^{42}\) Kulaynī, \(Kāfī\), vol. i, p. 200.

\(^{43}\) And note that the imams too are presented as having settled legal points in
response to petitions submitted to them by private persons: ‘one of our
companions wrote a petition (\(kitāb\) to Abū Ja‘far the Second, asking him about
a man who has unlawful intercourse with a woman . . . He wrote in his own hand
and with his own seal . . . (Kulaynī, \(Kāfī\), vol. vii, p. 163; compare above, chapter
4, p. 47).

\(^{44}\) Ibn al-Ḥanafīyya was \(ibn\ \(khayr\ \(al-nas\ \(bāda\ \(l-nabī\ (Kuthayyir ‘Azza in Ibn Sa‘d,
\(Ṭabaqāt\, vol. v, p. 107); the Hāshimites were superior to \(al-nās\ \(kullihih\ (Kumayt,
p. 58 = 42, no. 2:87).


\(^{46}\) Ibn Sharāshūb, \(Manāqīb\, vol. ii, p. 302.

\(^{47}\) Ibn Sharāshūb, \(Manāqīb\, vol. ii, p. 296.

\(^{48}\) Ḍabībī, \(Wāfīdāt\, p. 24 (also cited in \(’lqd\, vol. ii, p. 109\); and Qalqashandī, \(Subh\,
vol. i, p. 258, with the addition that he guides with his light). The Prophet also
described ‘Abī as such (Ibn al-Athīr, \(Usd\ \(al-\(ghāba\ \(fi\ \(mārifat\ \(al-sahāba\, Cairo
1285–6, vol. iv, p. 31). Ḥujr b. ‘Adī asked God to make ‘Abī \(hādiya\ \(ummat\\)
\(mahdiyya\ (Naṣr b. Muzāḥim, \(Waqāt\ \(Ṣīfīn\, p. 381).

\(^{49}\) \(Aqīm\ \(hudīta\ \(hādiyya\ \(mahdiyya\ \(fā’l-yawm\ \(talqā\ \(jaddaka\ \(l-nabiyya\, as a
member of the government troops at Karbalā’ is supposed to have said (Tab.,
followers. So of course was Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya in the opinion of Mukhtar, and he was perhaps the first Mahdi in the sense of a specific and long-awaited redeemer figure, though Sulaymān; and 'Umar II were soon to follow suit, as were other 'Alids in due course. But all the imams were mahdiyyūn according to the Ismā'īlīs. Still, most Shi‘ite literature being late, the epithet mahdi is here less commonly used of the imams than of the redeemer at the end of time, as it is in classical Sunnite literature too. Further, the imam shares with Umayyad caliphates the quality of mufahham, made to understand on a par with Solomon in the Qur‘ān. He also had superhuman knowledge, and in this respect he is better endowed than his Umayyad counterpart, who only had superhuman ra'y. He is also divinely protected against error (ma‘ṣūm), and in this respect too he is better endowed than the Umayyads, who nonetheless came close to acquiring the same quality. Thus, as has been seen, the Umayyad caliphate was a ‘ʾisma against error to which one should hold fast as one holds fast to God’s rope; ‘Abd al-Malik was ma‘ṣūm min khaṭal al-qawl wa-zalal al-fi‘l, and ‘Ubaydallāh al-‘Anbarī spoke to al-Mahdi of al-khulafā’ al-

50 Tab., ser. ii, pp. 546.
52 Cf. EI, s.v. ‘al-mahdi’, col. 112b. Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya was the Mahdi foretold by Ka‘b al-Ḥajjār according to Kuthayyir ‘Azza (Aghānī, vol. ix, p. 16). For Sulaymān, see above, chapter 3, p. 36; he was the Mahdi foretold by the Torah and the Psalms and by rabbis and soothsayers (Farazdaq vol. i, p. 327). For ‘Umar II, whose physical features foretold that he was the Mahdi, see below, appendix 1, p. 114.
53 Ahmad b. Ya‘qūb, Risāla, fol. 101r.
54 EI*, s.v. ‘imāma’, p. 1167a; Kulaynī, Kāfī, vol. i, pp. 270f.; E. Kohlberg, ‘The Term Muḥaddath in Twelver Shi‘ism’ Studia Orientalia Memoriae D. H. Banet Dedicata, Jerusalem 1979, p. 40n. For the Umayyads, see the references given above, chapter 4, note 13. The Imāmīs seem to have forgotten the Qur‘ānic origin of the term mufahham. In Mufid, Irshād, pp. 140f., we are told that ‘Ali judged after the manner of David, that is’ according to inspiration (ilḥām, on which see Kohlberg, op. cit., p. 40); but there is no reference to David and Solomon in their definitions of mufahham.
55 EI*, s.v. ‘imāma’, p. 1167a. Their ‘ilm is mentioned already by al-Kumayt (p. 7 = 6, no. 1:22; it is a gift from the Omniscient).
56 Cf. the references given above, chapter 4, notes 92–3.
57 Cf. above, chapter 3, pp. 38f.
mu'tasam bihim wa'l-ma'sümün, though the khulafā’ in question were scholars rather than rulers. Popular sentiment in Umayyad Syria had it that whoever had been caliph for three days would escape hell fire, God counting only the good deeds of a caliph, not the bad ones, a sentiment which might easily have issued in a denial of the existence of the uncounted deeds. For all that in Sunni Islam 'isma is reserved for prophets, it was hardly the Imamīs who invented the concept. It is conspicuously absent from al-Kumayt’s poetry, and when it makes its appearance elsewhere, it is defined with reference to the same Qur’ānic verses to which the Umayyads and their poets had alluded. Even so, it was undoubtedly more important for the Imamīs than for adherents of the Umayyads to exempt the imams from error and sin, given that the ahl al-bayt were Qur’ānically defined as purified.

‘We are two families of Quraysh who will be worshipped instead of God, we and Banū Umayya’, Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya is supposed to have said. Early Muslims thus recognized that though adherents of the Umayyads and the Ḥashimītes sponsored different caliphs, they were at one in their conception of the caliphate itself. It is because the same concept of the caliphate was involved that opportunistic poets could praise Umayyads and Ḥashimītes in exactly the same terms.
Imāmīs did not raise the imamate to the level of prophecy:⁶⁷ this was the level at which it had been born and at which the Umayyads had unsuccessfully tried to maintain it. It was only as the Muslim world at large rejected this concept that the Imāmīs began to look deviant.

We should like to conclude by considering briefly why and with what effect the Muslims first created and next rejected the office of khilāfat Allāh.⁶⁸ Given that Islam originated among a people accustomed to statelessness, it is odd, at first sight, that its adherents should have consented to the formation of so powerful an office; indeed, the conventional view that the caliphate originated as mere succession to the political power of the Prophet might seem to make better historical sense. But this would be to underestimate the effect on the Arabs of God’s intervention in their affairs. No sooner had He sent a prophet to the Arabs than He made the super-powers of the day collapse, enabling His adherents to leave their immemorial life of ‘sand and lice’⁶⁹ for incredible wealth and power in the Fertile Crescent and beyond: to the exhilarated participants in this venture, God was synonymous with success. Everything which happened was God’s own handiwork on their behalf;⁷⁰ and it was this which made it seem natural to them that He should have a representative on earth here and now, however the idea may have suggested itself to them in the first place.⁷¹ Besides, as long as the Deputy resided in Medina fairly lame compared with those addressed to Umayyads, does not seem to be in al-Šāwi’s edition).

Al-Kumayt told Hishām that through him God had illuminated darkness (‘Iqd, vol. ii, p. 185⁸), while al-Sayyid al-Ḥimyarī praised al-Manṣūr as intrinsic to salvation (above, chapter 5, note 157). Even al-Sharīf al-Muraḍa saw fit to describe the ‘Abbāsid caliph as the imam through whose guidance we know the turūq al-hudū (Diwān, vol. i, p. 5¹).⁶⁷

⁶⁷ Cf. EI², s.v. ‘Imāma’, p. 1166b.

⁶⁸ We only wish to consider the political effects here. For the cultural significance of the development analysed in this book, see Crone and Cook, Hagarism, index, s.v. ‘imamate’ (where it was first proposed that Umayyad and Shi’ite imams alike exemplify the same ‘high-priestly’ pattern).

⁶⁹ Ramsī wa-qam/, cf. EI², s.v. ‘al-‘Arab, Djazīrat al-’, p. 542a.

⁷⁰ To document this properly would require another book; but see the emotive account in D. Sourdel (ed. and tr.). ‘Un pamphlet musulman anonyme d’époque ‘abbāside contre les Chrétiens’, Revue des Etudes Islamiques 34 (1966), p. 33 = 26, where this still comes across strongly. Note that even Ibn Khalīdūn, the first sociologist, could only explain the conquests as a miracle (Muqaddima, pp. 251ff.)

⁷¹ On 26 November 1984, a participant in the recent revolution in Iran similarly argued on British television that the revolution was the direct result of God’s intervention on the ground that only God was sufficiently powerful to have brought it about.

⁷² Cf. appendix 1. The reader will note that we assume the caliphal title to have been
he was no more of an absolutist ruler than the Messenger had been, and contemporaries could hardly have anticipated that the nature of the state was soon to change.

Change it did, however. As the conquests slowed down on the one hand and the number of Muslims increased on the other, the former conquerors increasingly found themselves reduced to subjects deprived of a say in the running of public affairs. In principle, of course, nobody could possibly object to delegating public affairs to a representative of God Himself on earth: Imāmi literature eloquently describes how wonderful it would be to do precisely that. But in practice it amounted to a total surrender of power to a ruler who was by definition always in the right; and the sheer might of the caliphate both forced and tempted the Umayyads to make increasing use of this power over and above the frequently impossible and certainly always contradictory wishes of their subjects. In short, when the Deputy began to wield the power ascribed to him, this power was felt to be oppressive: once the initial sense of exhilaration was over, constitutional crises were bound to set in.72

Now from one point of view one might have expected the ultimate outcome of these crises to have been a rejection of absolutist rule for some sort of consultative government, or in other words the creation of institutional checks on the exercise of caliphal power. The widespread insistence that the caliphate be elective (al-amr shūrā), the endless demands for observance of kitāb and sunna, good practice and past models, the constant objections to Umayyad fiscal policy, and the general readiness to take up arms against what was perceived to be oppressive rule, all these are features indicative of so stubborn a determination to keep government under control that one might have credited it with a good chance of success. But from another point of view it is not of course surprising that no representative bodies ever did emerge. The caliph’s resources were far too massive for anyone to have much leverage against him. Mu‘āwiya paid careful attention to consultation with the tribal nobility, and all caliphs had to engage in a certain amount of horse-trading in order to have their successors accepted; but no caliphs had to negotiate in order to get revenue, taxes being paid overwhelmingly by non-Muslims. Practically everyone of importance in the Umayyad state adopted after the conquest of the Fertile Crescent had begun; this point too is discussed in appendix 1.

72 We owe the term ‘constitutional crisis’ and all the thought which it suggests to Dr F. W. Zimmermann.
owed the bulk of his income to dhimmīs too, but through the intermediary of the state; disputes over fiscal policy were accordingly disputes over the distribution of public revenues among those entitled to a share, not over the allocation of the tax burden among those obliged to pay.\(^7\) The tribal nobility did have political power independently of the state in the form of tribal followings, but these were ephemeral assets under conditions of settlement in the urbanised and socially stratified Middle East, and by the second half of the Umayyad period this nobility had duly begun to disappear from the public scene.\(^7\) Owing both their power and their income to the state, the generals and governors who replaced it were even less likely to win concessions from the caliph, as Yazīd b. al-Muḥallab discovered at the cost of his life. In short, for all the activism bequeathed by the Arab tribal past, the leverage which medieval dukes and barons had against the impoverished kings of western Europe simply was not available.

Even if activism had sufficed to put shackles on the caliph, it is hard to believe that the outcome would have been other than political collapse. On the one hand, an area so huge as that controlled by the Umayyads could scarcely be held together for any period of time by any form of government other than the imperial one towards which the Umayyads were moving; and on the other hand, the tribesmen and ex-tribesmen who made up their subjects were so unruly that throughout most of the period repressive government in the style of al-Ḥajjāj was required for the maintenance of a semblance of order. To this should perhaps be added that the opponents of absolutism rarely proposed any concrete form of machinery for the limitation of power. Yazīd III declared himself willing to step down if he failed to implement his programme and/or a more suitable candidate could be found, but he did not say who was going to review his progress or how they were to proceed if they deemed it to be poor. Khārijite

\(^7\) For the nature of such disputes in the first civil war, at the beginning of the Umayyad period, see M. Hinds, 'Kūfān Political Alignments and their Background in the Mid-Seventh Century A.D.', *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 2 (1971); id., 'The Murder of the Caliph 'Uthmān'. For their nature in the third civil war, at the end of this period, see the accession speech by Yazīd III summarized above, chapter 5, p. 63. Taxation was not an issue except in so far as it related to dhimmīs (especially dhimmīs trying to gain recognition as Muslims, cf. Wellhausen, *Arab Kingdom*, ch. 5); and as far as Yazīd III was concerned, over-taxation of dhimmīs was of political importance only in so far as it led to de-population of the lands on which his Muslim adherents were dependent for their income.

works also disregard all practical problems posed by Khārijite political ideals; there is a total lack of institutional machinery behind the Muslim concept of consensus; and pre-Mongol Muslim society is in general characterized by a predominance of informal over formal organization. Still, we are not entirely sure about the relevance of this point. By the late Umayyad period al-Ḥārith b. Surayj and Naṣr b. Sayyār had a good idea of how to set up a shūrā, and so apparently did Yazīd III himself: all parties involved designated men of integrity to act as electors. Representative bodies could presumably have developed from these modest beginnings if the opportunity had been there. The fact that the opponents of caliphal absolutism ended up by satisfying themselves with purely theoretical propositions may thus be a straightforward result of the caliphal ability to ignore their demands.

Given that the caliph's exercise of power could not be controlled, the opponents of Umayyad absolutism had two courses of action open to them. On the one hand, they could oppose the ruling dynasty in the belief that government would cease to be oppressive if there was a change of personnel. This was the course adopted by various followers of the ahl al-bayt such as the shi'a of the 'Abbāsids and 'Alī; and the remarkable fidelity of the Imāmīs to the original conception of the caliphate turns on the fact that they never put their belief to the test: had Ja'far al-Ṣādiq been so unwise as to let himself be elected caliph in the aftermath of the 'Abbāsid revolution, even his adherents would soon have repented of their views. Alternatively, the opponents of caliphal absolutism could limit the area affected by it by withdrawing from caliphal control all matters of religious significance, above all the definition of God's law. This was the solution adopted by the future Sunnīs, and its feasibility turns on the fact that rulers cannot in fact shape the beliefs and private lives of their subjects unless the latter believe they have a right to do so. Caliphal power thus remained absolutist, but it affected politics alone. Of course, given that the Sunnī solution deprived the caliph of a say in the definition of the law all while insisting that he abide by this law, it could be said that the scholars succeeded in turning an absolutist

75 cf. above, chapter 5, note 49.
76 He was invited by Abī Salama to participate in a shūrā, but wisely declined (C. Cahen 'Points de vue sur la "Révolution 'abbāside"', Revue Historique 230 (1963), p. 330). Ismā'īlism did of course survive the creation of an Ismā'īlī state, but not on the whole among the subjects of this state: the Berbers of North Africa were soon disillusioned, and the Egyptians chose never to convert.
monarch into a constitutional one. But in the absence of machinery for the protection of the constitution, they only did so in a purely theoretical sense: in constitutional theory the caliphate was an elective office too, for all that it was plainly hereditary in practice. But though caliphal absolutism remained, the victory of the scholars had profound political effects.

The historically significant point is that a ruler who has no say at all in the definition of the law by which his subjects have chosen to live cannot rule those subjects in any but a purely military sense. When the Jews elaborated their all-embracing religious law, it was precisely with a view to surviving as a community of their own under alien rulers, their own state having been lost. When the Muslims took refuge in a similar law, the state from which they had distanced themselves likewise had to be manned with outsiders in order to go on. In Hindu India, where brahmanic dominance similarly led to the formation of an all-embracing holy law withdrawn from royal control, the state became practically redundant. In all three cases the prevailing attitude to power was one of quietism: rulers must be obeyed whether they are right or wrong, observant of the law or not. From this point of view no ruler could complain of the laws in question. But rulers were obeyed as outsiders to the community, not as representatives of it, except (in Islam) in their performance of ritual duties such as leadership of the prayer or conduct of jihad, the latter being an activity particularly apt to restore moral continuity between the ruler and his subjects. The state was thus something which sat on top of society, not something which was rooted in it; and given that there was minimal interaction between the two, there was also minimal political development: dynasties came and went, but it was only the dynasties that changed.

From the point of view of the political development of the Islamic world, the victory of the 'ulamā' was thus a costly one. A less stultifying solution to the problem posed by God's deputy on earth would have been a division of labour whereby all law of public relevance remained with the Deputy, while private and ritual law passed to scholars willing to collaborate with him, a situation familiar from elsewhere. But where all aspects of life are covered

77 We owe this point to Dr F. W. Zimmermann.
79 Such a division of labour was characteristic of Rome before the Dominate and of pre-modern continental Europe. In classical Greece and China the state also took over a limited area of the law, though no private scholars emerged to take over the rest.
by a single sacred law, such a solution is impossible. God’s law was indivisible, and collaboration between His rival representatives was ruled out until one or the other side had won. (There were of course collaborative scholars such as Abū Yūsuf; but such scholars tended to lose their standing among their peers.)80 As it was the ‘ulamā’ won. Islamic history would certainly have been different, but not necessarily more dynamic in political terms if the Deputies had managed to defeat them. The fact that all aspects of life were rolled together in a single God-given packet in the Islamic view of things was of crucial importance for the formation of a new civilisation in an area in which civilisation cannot be said to have been in short supply; the same fact lies behind the ideological intransigence of Islam vis-à-vis the Western world today. It is a fact which throughout history has given Islam extraordinary powers of survival; but at the same time it has always interfered with the capacity of Muslims to organize themselves.

Appendix 1

On the date and origin of the caliphate

We have argued that the caliphal title was born as khalīfat Allāh without going into the question of when it was born because we have not wished to tangle the argument proposed in this book with highly controversial issues, but we may appropriately offer here such thoughts as we have on this question.

If it is accepted that Islam began as a messianic movement,¹ there can have been no caliph in the sense of institutionalised head of state until the messianic venture was over. Indeed Crone and Cook conjecture that Abū Bakr was not head of state at all on the grounds that doctrinally there is not room for one between herald (Muḥammad) and redeemer ('Umar), and that chronologically there seems to be no room for him either.² There does not however appear to be any evidence to substantiate this hypothesis: no passage in Muslim or non-Muslim literature unambiguously omits Abū Bakr from the list of Muslim rulers, and early poetry fails to support the conjecture for all that it goes against the historical tradition on other questions such as the identity of the victors at Ṣifṭin.³ Thus a verse by the apostate al-Ḥūṭay'a satirically contrasts obedience to the Prophet and to a mere Abū Bakr;⁴ al-Farazdaq speaks of the ṣiddiq and the two martyrs, sc. 'Umar and 'Uthmān,⁵ and of 'Umar and his companion Abū Bakr;⁶ al-'Ajjiij refers to the covenant of the Prophet, the ṣiddiq, 'Uthmān and 'Umar,⁷ while Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyāt speaks of the Prophet, the ṣiddiq, and the khulafā';⁸ al-Kumayt says that he disapproves of slander of Abū Bakr and 'Umar, for all that

1 Crone and Cook, Hagarism, part 1.  2 Ibid., p. 28 and note 72 thereto.  3 Cf. above, chapter 5, note 67.  4 Aghānī, vol. ii, p. 157; also attributed to Ḥārīṭa b. Surāqa al-Kindī in Ibn 'Asākir, Tahdhib, vol. iii, p. 70, while vol. vii, p. 99, is not sure whether to attribute it to al-Ḥuṭay'a's brother or to al-Ḥuṭay'a himself.  5 Farazdaq, vol. i, p. 264⁷.  6 Ibid., p. 329⁸.  7 'Ajjiij, no. 115⁴-⁷ (p. 15).  8 Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyāt, no. 39:19.
it was 'Ali who was imām al-ḥaqq; and so on. The fact that al-Ḥuṭay'ā's verse is unflattering to Abū Bakr is not of course a guarantee of its authenticity; Abū Bakr is not always clearly identified elsewhere as a head of state; and at any rate an influential politician could well have been turned into a head of state by Marwānid times as long as nobody had an interest in remembering otherwise (as did the Umayyads in the case of Șīffīn). But in the absence of positive evidence for the conjecture, there is too much to explain away.

There are nonetheless some suggestive passages in which Abū Bakr seems to have been forgotten. Thus, as mentioned already, Yazīd b. al-Muhallab spoke of "Umar, 'Uthmān and the caliphs of God after them", as if the line of caliphs had started with 'Umar. Similarly, a Medinese successor said that 'I have lived under 'Umar, 'Uthmān and the later caliphs, and they only beat a slave forty times for qadhf", meaning that this was the right punishment given that no caliph had acted otherwise. And Zayd b. Thābit cited caliphal precedent to Muʿāwiyah with the comment that 'I have lived under the two caliphs before you", for all that Zayd, a Companion of the Prophet, could scarcely have missed the caliphate of Abū Bakr. Apparently Abū Bakr did not count as a khalifa to any of these individuals. He certainly did not count as an authority to anyone engaged in the elaboration of the law: traditions ascribing legal doctrines to Abū Bakr are practically non-existent. If he was head of state, he would thus appear to have been one of a different type from his successors.

Now it is well known from the many richly documented messianic movements of recent times that reality often forces the participants in such movements to take considerable liberty with their doctrinal script: the herald assumes the role of messiah, or is taken by some to be him; the messiah decides to be only a herald, or to abandon the script altogether for a while; several leaders are active, the allocation of roles between them being anything but clear, and so on. Abū Bakr may well have been an example of this: as head of state

9 Kumayt, p. 156 = 107f. (no. 8:1ff.).
11 Cf. above, chapter 2, note 13.
12 Cf. above, chapter 4, note 53.
13 Cf. above, chapter 4, note 62; contrast 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. x, no. 18829, where a subgovernor refuses to apply Muʿāwiyah's instructions on the ground that the Prophet, Abū Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmān had acted otherwise.
14 For one which gets close, see 'Abd al-Razzāq, Muṣannaf, vol. I, no. 1858.
he would seem to be someone who kept things together until the time was ripe for the script again. What title he held is uncertain. The sources assure us that he was khalifat rasūl Allāh, and so he may well have been on a par with many others, that is he was the Prophet's deputy (in Medina). The point that matters, however, is that whatever title he may have held (and however the chronological problem is to be solved), his role was unique to him: he did not initiate a line of khulūfā'.

The messianic venture was over when 'Umar al-Fārūq entered Jerusalem. Was it then 'Umar who adopted the title khalifat Allāh in order to legitimate his new role? Yazīd b. al-Muhallab, who unselfconsciously identified 'Umar as the first deputy of God, apparently believed this to be the case. One might add that the title amīn Allāh is also attested for 'Umar,15 that he is said to have characterised himself as sultān Allāh fi 'l-ard,16 and that a poetess described him as 'īsmat al-nās and ghayth.17 But this is not clinching evidence. Yazīd b. al-Muhallab may simply have assumed that 'Umar had carried the same title as his successors, and retrojection could effortlessly account for the other attestations too. After all, under the influence of metrical demands no less a person than al-Shāfi‘i was capable of identifying even Abī Bakr as khalīfat rabbihi.18 According to the tradition, the novel title adopted by 'Umar was amīr al-mu'minīn. This would suggest that the caliphal title was first adopted by 'Uthmān, the first ruler for whom the title is securely attested.

Whether 'Umar or 'Uthmān was the first khalīfa, however, the point is that the caliphate would seem to have originated as institutionalised redemption. This would explain why it appears as a redemptive institution in Umayyad court poetry, a point to which we have drawn attention already.19 It does not of course explain why the redemptive term al-fārūq was replaced by the less distinctive term al-r. ahdī. But given that this shift took place, it ceases to be odd that the caliphs should be flattered as al-mahdī who makes the blind see, cures diseases of the breast and fills the earth with justice, more or less as a matter of course; and it also makes it obvious that any attempt to restore the original vision of the caliphate, such as was made by the 'Abbāsids and by the Ismā‘īlīs, was liable to take a

16 Tyan, Califat, p. 201.
17 Tab., ser. i, p. 2764.
19 Cf. above, chapter 3, pp. 33ff.
messianic form: the caliphate was supposed to dispense the redemption brought by the Fārūq. This point also comes to the fore in the case of 'Umar II.

'Umar II’s caliphate coincided with the turn of the century, an event associated with the appearance of a renewer (mujaddid) in classical Islam; al-Suyūṭī, for example, thought that 'Umar may have been one such.20 If, as is commonly assumed, the belief in the mujaddid is early, then the date of this caliph’s accession may well have predisposed him to see himself as a reformer. Poetry, however, suggests that he was influenced above all by the fact that he was related to 'Umar I and bore his name. His descent from al-Fārūq is stressed by Jarīr,21 al-Farazdaq22 and 'Utba b. Shammās;23 according to Jarīr, he also resembled 'Umar al-Fārūq in respect of his sīra;24 elsewhere we are told that he deliberately tried to imitate 'Umar;25 indeed, according to 'Uwayf, he was himself known as al-Fārūq.26 In short, he was expected to be 'Umar I redivivus. He was also accepted as such. More precisely, he was accepted as mahdī al-khayr, al-mahdī ḥaqqa27, the Mahdī in so far as one existed,27 a mahdī, or simply the Mahdī,28 whose physical peculiarities foretold that he was the one destined to fill the earth with justice.29 In short, 'Umar al-Fārūq came back as 'Umar the Mahdī to prove that a rightly-guided caliph was indeed a redeemer.

There remains the question of where, if anywhere, the Arabs picked up the idea of having a deputy of God on earth. Most authors assume the institution to be of foreign origin. Thus Tyan believes the caliphate to have assumed a religious, or as he puts it, theocratic, character as a result of Byzantine and Persian influence,30 a view endorsed by other scholars,31 while Crone and Cook propose a Samaritan prototype, assuming the institution to have been theocratic from the start.32 We do not have much to add to this discussion. It

21 Jarīr, p. 1357.
22 Farazdaq, vol. 1, p. 2227.
24 Jarīr, p. 5111; cf. also Farazdaq, vol. 11, p. 63011, where the Fārūq is once more invoked.
25 Cf. above, chapter 5, note 130.
27 Nu‘aym b. Ḥammād, Fītan, fols. 99a, 102a, cf. 102b; Fasawī, Ma‘rīfa, vol. 1, p. 613.
30 Calīfāt, p. 439.
32 Hagarism, pp. 26f.
is a fact that the Byzantine emperor had come to be seen as God’s representative on earth by the late sixth century, and that here as in Islam there was a predilection for David and Solomon as prototypes of the ideal ruler. (Indeed, even the western view that Peter was vicar of God on earth seems to have reached the Islamic Middle East at an early stage.) That Sasanid kingship was what one might call caesaropapist is well known. But all that this amounts to is no more than that the Muslim concept of power was in line with that current in the non-Muslim world. It is an odd idea that a state founded by a prophet should have needed the example of secular empires in order to develop theocracy; and pace Tyand others, the caliphate clearly did fuse religion and politics from the start, whereas they were only twins on the other side. Neither the Persian nor the Byzantine emperor was on a par with the khalîfa, who was intrinsic to the acquisition of worldly prosperity and heavenly bliss alike. What is more, we do not have the right relationship between religion, politics and law in either empire. The Byzantine basileus was indeed the ultimate source of law, but he was so in his capacity as Roman, i.e. essentially pre-Christian, emperor, and the law in question was a secular one irrelevant to the attainment of Christian salvation. Conversely, Zoroastrian law, though religious, was not formulated by the Shāhānshāh. The imperial models may well have influenced the development of the caliphate in various ways: but when Mu‘awiya is accused of being kisrā ‘l-‘arab and of having turned the caliphate into something hiraqliyya and kisrawiyya, what is meant is that he accumulated power at the expense of his subjects by introducing dynastic succession and the like, not that he introduced theocracy. There is no imperial model behind the office of khalîfat Allâh. It is only the Samaritans who offer the right fusion of political power and religious authority in conjunction with a holy law, and they do have the merit of speaking of hlyft yhwh. But this could conceivably be an instance of Islamic contamination, and the Arabs may have invented their khalîfat Allâh on their own.

34 Ibid., p. 221.
37 Bal., Ans., vol. IV/a, p. 125.
39 Crone and Cook, Hagarism, p. 178, note 71.
Appendix 2

The letters of al-Walid II and Yazid III

The Letter of al-Walid II

Al-Walid II’s letter concerning the designation of his successors is preserved in the chronicle of al-Tabari (ser. ii, pp. 1756ff., sub anno 125; also reproduced in Safwat, Rasâ’il, vol. ii, pp. 448ff.), and apparently there alone. It was first singled out as a document of some importance by Dennett, who also offered a summary translation (or more precisely a loose paraphrase) which is very deficient in places (D. C. Dennett, ‘Marwan ibn Muhammad: the Passing of the Umayyad Caliphate’, Harvard Ph.D. diss. 1939, pp. 169ff.; partially reproduced in M. Khadduri, The Islamic Conception of Justice, Baltimore and London 1984, p. 26). More recently the letter has been discussed by Nagel (Rechtleitung, pp. 82ff) and Khadduri (Justice, pp. 25ff.). All three scholars assume it to be authentic, and so do we. For one thing, it is hard to see why anyone should have felt tempted to forge the text of a succession document equally devoid of religious significance and historical effect. For another, a forger active in the ‘Abbâsid period (and he could scarcely have been active before it) would have required extraordinary historical insight to produce a document in which the importance of the caliphal institution is stressed, but its Umayyad incumbents are taken for granted. Further, the fact that al-Ma’mûn produced a succession document along very similar lines (see appendix 4) shows that the inshā’ did indeed come out of a bureaucratic file; and since the ‘Abbâsids before al-Ma’mûn do not appear to have made use of this type of inshā’, we must assume either that it antedated the ‘Abbâsids or that it originated in the time of al-Ma’mûn. It does not seem likely that al-Ma’mûn’s secretary would have amused himself by penning elaborate succession documents in the name of Umayyad caliphs (nor would one have assumed him to have had sufficient historical sense to omit Ḥadîth, be it
The letters of al-Walid II and Yazid III

Prophetic or other; but of Ḥadīth there is none. We are thus entitled to assume that the *inshā*' antedated the 'Abbāsids and that the letter was written by Samāl on behalf of al-Walid II precisely as the letter states. (The name Samāl is peculiar and should perhaps be read Simāk though there do not appear to be any variant readings of it; it could scarcely be a corruption of Sālim [b.'Abd al-Rahmān, *ṣāhib diwān al-rasā'il*, cf. Tab., ser. ii, p. 1750].) Given that we only have al-Ṭabarī's version, it is hard to say whether it is based on a written copy of the letter or on an oral version thereof, but one would have thought it to be based on a document. The letter is long and so close to al-Ma'mūn's in formulation that if it was copied from somebody who had simply heard it read aloud, the person in question must have had an extraordinary memory. Al-Ṭabarī says that he has it from 'Alī, *sc.* al-Madā'inī, 'from his aforementioned shuyūkh', according to whom two men came to Naṣr [b. Sayyār] with the letter *wa-huwa amma ba'da[. . .]* etc, a formulation apt to suggest that he is reproducing the text of the copy sent to Khurāsān.

The text is corrupt in places and not always easily amended. In our attempt to restore meaning to it we have greatly benefitted from the fact that Professor Iḥsān 'Abbās was willing to place his expertise at our disposal. Even in its amended version, however, the letter does not lend itself to translation. The style is involved and overloaded: as the scribe piles warning upon warning, both syntax and logic are stretched to breaking point. Exactly what he has in mind at any particular point is often less than clear, and those who heard the letter read aloud must frequently have lost the thread; on the other hand they must have felt that the overall message was being positively hammered into them: the caliphs are God's own instrument and everyone must obey them; obedience will be amply rewarded, whereas disobedience and dissension have dire consequences in both this world and the next. We hope that our cumbrous English version retains some of the same effect.

Both Dennett and Nagel saw evidence in this letter that the Umayyads denied the doctrine of free will (‘Marwan b. Muhammad’, p. 172; *Rechtleitung*, p. 71 and note 1 thereto), and Khadduri even claims that the letter was intended as a reply to Qadarite critics of the Umayyad regime (*Justice*, p. 25). But we must beg to differ. There is indeed a strong sense in it that God is responsible for everything, not least for the success of His caliphs and the downfall of their enemies, but there is not anything remotely resembling a thought on the relationship between the divine and the
human will as a theological problem. What the letter broadcasts is a strong conviction that the caliphs have God on their side, or in other words a strong conviction that the caliphs are in the right. Feeling in the right has nothing to do with determinism. ‘Needless to say’, Khadduri assures us, ‘the aim of Walid’s letter was to identify Umayyad political justice with the doctrine of predestination’ (Justice, p. 27). But to argue that a ruler owes his power to God is not to adopt a predestinarian position, and to assert that his acts are in accordance with God’s will is not to deny his capacity to act against it; practically all rulers would have to be classified as Jabrites if it were. In fact, the strong emphasis of the letter on the rewards and punishments in store for the obedient and disobedient is anything but predestinarian. And Umayyad court poetry similarly presents the caliphs as God’s own instruments on the assumption that the caliphs wished to be assured of their own rectitude, not that they hankered for statements on the human inability to determine events. In general, the theory that the Umayyads were Jabrites must be said to rest on slender foundations (and the commonly accepted view that Qadarism originated as a reaction to Umayyad Jabrism is unacceptable even if they were, cf. F. W. Zimmermann, review of J. van Ess in International Journal of Middle East Studies 16 (1984), p. 441).

The numbers in the margin refer to the text. The paragraph divisions are by us.

1756 [The era of the prophets]

1. ‘To continue, God (blessed are His names, mighty is His praise, and exalted is His glorification), chose // Islam as His own religion and made it the religion\(^1\) of the chosen ones of His creation. Then he selected messengers from among angels and men,\(^2\) and He sent them with it and enjoined it upon them. So there was between them and the nations which passed away and the generations which vanished, generation upon generation [events of the type described in the Qur’an, but they continued to?\(^9\)] call to ‘that which is better\(^3\) and guide to a

1 Reading \textit{din} for \textit{khayr} with BM and O. Similarly M. A.-F. Ibrāhīm (ed.), \textit{Ta’rikh al-Ṭabarī}, Cairo 1960–9 (which preserves the Leiden pagination in the margin).
3 The scribe must have omitted a line here. It is true that a simple insertion of \textit{man} before \textit{yadūna} would suffice to make some sense of the passage (‘so there were among them and among the nations which passed away, \textit{etc}, those who called to that which is best’). But what is being announced is clearly a relationship between God’s messengers and past nations, not something to be found among them; in other words, the letter must have said something about the strained relations between past messengers and past nations which regularly caused God to destroy the nations in question (cf. W. M. Watt, \textit{Bell’s Introduction to the
straight path. Ultimately the grace of God [as manifested] in His prophethood reached Muḥammad, at a time when knowledge had become obliterated and people had become blind, having acquired different desires and gone their separate ways, the waymarks of truth having become effaced. Through him God made guidance clear and dispelled blindness, and through him He saved [people] from going astray and perishing. He elucidated the religion through him, and He made him a mercy to mankind. Through him He sealed His revelation. He gathered unto him everything with which He had honoured the prophets before him, and He made him follow their tracks, confirming the truth of that which He had revealed together with them, preserving it, calling to it and enjoying it.

2. In due course there were those from among his nation who responded to him and became adherents of the religion with which God had honoured them. They confirmed the truth of that which previous prophets of God [had preached], where their people used to call them liars, accepted their sincere advice where they used to reject it, protected their sacred things from the desecration which they used to commit, and venerated those things which they used to hold in contempt. No member of Muḥammad’s nation would hear someone give the lie to one of God’s prophets concerning that with which God had sent him, or impugn him in what he said or hurt him by calling him stupid, arguing against him or denying that which God had sent down with him, without deeming his blood to be lawful for it and cutting off such ties as he might have with him “even if they were their fathers, their sons or their clansmen.”


4 Allat hiya ʾaḥsan, cf. Qur., 17:55; 29:45; 41:34.


6 Taṣḥīḥ min al-hawā. The temptation to read ḥanālī for ḥawa is strong, but compare Kumayt, p. 54 = 40 (no. 2:73): wa-kayfa ḍaḥālūhum huda waʾl-hawā shattā bihim mutasha’ību).

7 Reading anḥajja for abḥajja, following Ṣafwat, Rasāʾil, vol. ii, p. 448.


9 Wa-qafftī bihiʾāʾ thālixirīm, ‘he caused their tracks to be retraced through him’. Cf. Qur., 2:81; 5:50; 57:27. 10 Cf. Qur., 5:52.

11 Compare the similar account in al-Rashīd’s letter to Constantine, Ṣafwat, Rasāʾil, vol. iii, pp. 258f.

12 Reading muḥadhdhib as the object of yasma’u (or yusma’u).

13 Reading aw for idh, following O. Similarly Ibrāhim.

14 Li-man anzala ʾ illāh ‘alayhi maʾaḥu. We omit alayhi, following O, on the ground that the text has previously used maʾaḥu alone (compare Qur. 2:209).

15 We omit the fa-lam yabqa kāfir preceding illā, following BM and O. The alternative translation would be: ‘so no unbeliever remained without thereby rendering his blood lawful and cutting off such relationships as he might have with him’.

16 Wa-in kānū ābaʾahum aw abnaʾahum aw ʾashiratahum. The sudden shift from singular to plural arises from the fact that this is a Qur’ānic quotation, if a slightly deviant one (cf. Qur., 58:22).
[The era of the caliphs]

3. Then God deputed His caliphs over the path of His prophethood (‘alā minhāj nubuwwatihi) – [that is] when He took back His Prophet and sealed His revelation with him – for the implementation of His decree (hukm), the establishment of His normative practice (sunna) and restrictive statutes (hudūd), and for the observance of His ordinances (farā'īd) and His rights (huqūq), supporting Islam, consolidating that by which it is rendered firm, strengthening the strands of His rope, keeping [people] away from His forbidden things, providing for equity (adl) among His servants and putting His lands to right, [doing all of these things] through them.

[The importance of obedience to the caliphs]

4. God (blessed and exalted is He) says, “and if God had not kept back the people, some by means of others, surely the earth would have been corrupted; but God is bounteous to mankind”. So the caliphs of God followed one another, in charge of that which God had caused them to inherit from His prophets and over which He had deputed them. Nobody can dispute their right without God casting him down, and nobody can separate from their polity (jama'a) without God destroying him, nor can anyone hold their government in contempt or query the decree of God (qadā' Allāh) concerning them [sc. the caliphs] without God placing him in their power and giving them mastery over him, thus making an example and a warning to others. This is how God has acted towards anyone who has departed from the obedience to which He has ordered [people] to cling, adhere and devote themselves, and through which it is that heaven and earth came to be supported. God (blessed and exalted is He) has said, “then He lifted Himself to heaven when it was smoke, and said to it and to earth, ‘come willingly or unwillingly’. They said, ‘we come willingly’.

And God (exalted is His invocation) has said, “when your Lord said to the angels, ‘I am placing a deputy (khalīfa) on earth’, they said, ‘are you placing in it someone who will act corruptly and shed blood while we are celebrating Your praise and sanctifying You?’. He said, ‘I know what you know not’.

17 Reading tashādün for tashyīdün, following BM.
19 Ḥarīmihi, for all that one would have expected mahārīmihi (the word used below).
20 We have taken the liberty of not repeating ‘through them’ seven times (as does the text).
21 Qur., 2:252.
22 Literally ‘from the matter of His prophets’ (min amr anbiyā’ihī).
24 Qur., 41:10.
5. So through the caliphate God has preserved such servants of His as He has preserved on earth: to it He has assigned them, and it is through obedience to those whom He has appointed to it that those who have been given to understand and realise its importance\(^{26}\) attain happiness. God (blessed and exalted is He) knows that nothing has any mainstay or soundness save by the obedience through which He preserves His truth, puts His commands into effect, turns [people] away from acts of disobedience to Him, makes [them] stop short of His forbidden things and protects His sacred things. So he who holds to the obedience which has been apportioned to him is a friend of God and obeys His commands, attaining rectitude and being singled out for good fortune in [both] this world and the next. But he who leaves off it, forsakes it and is refractory towards God in respect of it loses his share, disobeys his Lord and forfeits [both] this world and the world to come.\(^{27}\) He becomes one of those overwhelmed by misery\(^{28}\) and overcome by aberrant things which lead their victims to the foulest places of water and the vilest places of slaughter in respect of the humiliation and retribution which God will inflict on them in this world. And He will cause them to undergo all the chastisement and grief which He has prepared for them [in the next].\(^{29}\)

6. Obedience is the head of this matter, its summit, its apex, its halter, its foundation, its refuge and its mainstay, after the declaration of belief in the unity of God with which God has distinguished between His believers. Through obedience the successful\(^{30}\) attain their stations from God and gain a right to reward from Him; and through disobedience others obtain those of His punishments which He metes out to them, that chastisement of His which He inflicts upon them, and that anger of His which he causes to befall them.\(^{31}\) // In abandonment\(^{32}\) and neglect of obedience, in departure from it, lack of attention to it and carelessness of it,\(^{33}\) God destroys [all] those who stray and disobey, who are blind and go to excess, and who leave the

---

26 Reading ufhimahā (or ulhimahā) wa-buṣṣirahā.
30 We have resorted to fairly drastic emendations here, reading wa-bī-l-CHASE 'Nāla ghayrhum mā yuhillu bihim naqimāthī hi wa-yuṣībhum min 'adhābihi wa-yuḥiqqu 'alāyhim min sukātihī. The text makes no sense as it stands, and though less drastic emendations are possible, we cannot think of any other which will preserve the parallelism.
31 Reading wa-bi-tark al-tā'a for wa-yunzalu bī-l-tā'a, cf. BM and O; similarly Ibrāhīm.
32 Reading tabaddhul for tabaddul.
paths of piety and religiosity. So adhere to obedience to God whatever may befall, come upon or happen to you. Be sincere in it, hold to it, hasten to it, devote yourselves to it and seek to come close to God through it. For you have seen instances of how God judges those who practise it in [the way in which He] elevates them, causing their argument to prevail, and rebuts the falsehood of those who oppose them, act with enmity against them, contend with them and seek to extinguish the light of God which is with them. Moreover, you have been informed of what disobedient people have incurred in the way of reproach and restriction, to the point that their affairs have come to ruin, ignominy, humiliation and perdition. In that there is a warning and a lesson for the perceptive person. [Such a person] will benefit from their clear message and hold fast to the favour bestowed by them, acknowledging the blessing of God’s decree in respect of those who pay heed to it.

[The covenant of succession]

7. Then God (to Him is praise and [from Him come] favour and bounty) guided the community to the best of outcomes for it from the point of view of prevention of bloodshed within it, preservation of its unity, consensus of its doctrine, straightness of its pillar, setting aright of its masses, and storing up of grace for it in this world – [the best, that is] after the caliphate with which He has made a system of order for them and a mainstay for their affairs – namely the covenant [of succession]. God has inspired His caliphs to make firm this covenant and to pay due regard in it to the Muslims at times of crisis, so that when something befalls their caliphs [sc. when they die], it will be for them something which they can trust when fear arises, in which they can seek refuge when problem[s] occur, which brings together that which is disunited and which leads to a state of concord, stabilising the lands of Islam and cutting short the insinuations of Satan regarding the destruction of this religion, the

37 Reading mawīṣa wa-'ibra for mawīṣa ‘ibra, cf. B.
38 Reading bi-wādīihā (or possibly bi-nawāṣihīhā, ‘from their counsels’).
39 ‘It’ standing for either obedience or warning and counsel.
41 Literally ‘in a great affair of theirs’ (fi jasīm amrīhim).
42 Ḝadīthun: the subject is implicit.
44 Arjā‘ al-Īslām, possibly a corruption of arkān al-Īslām.
splitting up of the unity of its adherents and their coming to disagree on that over which God has brought them together, for which his friends yearn and to which he incites them. God will show them nought in this matter but that which harms them and gives the lie to their ambitions; and they shall find that through that which He has decreed for His friends, God has made firm the settlement of their affairs and banished from them those who wish to introduce corruption and unfaithful conduct among them, or to enfeeble that which God has strengthened or to rely on that from which God has turned away.

8. So through these things God has perfected for His caliphs and His pious party, to whom He has entrusted obedience to Him, the good things to which He has accustomed them, and He has appointed for them [part] of His power to strengthen, ennoble, elevate and consolidate so that they may accomplish their end. The matter of this covenant is part of the completion of Islam and the perfection of those mighty favours by which God makes His people obliged to Him, and [also] part of that which God has made in it [sc. in Islam?] – for the person at whose hands He brings it about and at whose tongue He decrees it, making it successful for him whom He has appointed to this position – a most valuable treasure from His point of view and, from the point of view of the Muslims, the most excellent manifestation of the favour which He manifests among them and of the safeguard which He extends to them, of His power on which they rely, and of His refuge in which they enter. Through His refuge God has given them power to resist and through it He preserves them from all destruction, gathers them in from all disunion, subdues the people of hypocrisy and renders them immune to all dissension and schism.

9. So give praise to God, your Lord, who takes pity upon you and does you good in your affairs for that which He has guided you to in this covenant. God has made it [sc. the covenant] something in which you can trust, on which you can rely, from which you can attain tranquillity and in the shade of which you can seek shelter. Through it He shows you the right path wherever you turn your necks, wherever you direct your faces, and wherever your forelocks meet in matters of your religion and this world. In this there is a momentous grace

46 Reading 'aqd for the 'uqad adopted by the Leiden editors.
47 Reading fi'mā tawallā 'llāh 'anhu minhā, though the 'anhu is missing.
48 Bihā, a general reference to what has just been mentioned.
49 Al-Iṣā'ātādhi 'awwādatum. We have opted for 'good things' on the ground that 'the best' cannot be perfected.
50 This clause is implicit in sabbaba lahum, cf. Lane, Lexicon, s.v..
51 Literally 'the most excellent impress in that which He impresses upon them'.
52 Reading afyā'ihi for afnānihi, 'branches', on the ground that the preposition is fi rather than bi.
53 Viz. wherever you are together.
and a great favour from God bestowing amleness of health and safety, as is recognised by those of intelligence and good intentions who pay close attention to the consequences of their acts and who are cognisant of the beacon of the paths of rectitude. So you have reason to thank God in respect of all those ways in which He has preserved your religion and the state of your polity (amr jama'atikum), and you are competent to know the essence of His binding right[s] in this matter and to praise Him for that which He has resolved for you. So let the importance and worth of this in your estimation be in proportion to the favour which God has bestowed upon you in it, God willing. There is no strength save in God.

10. Moreover, ever since God deputed him, the Commander of the Faithful has not had a greater preoccupation or concern than this covenant, on account of his knowledge of its pre-eminent role in the affair[s] of the Muslims and those things in it which God has shown them for which they are thankful. He [sc. the Commander of the Faithful] ennobles them by that which he decrees for them, and he chooses to exert himself in this matter [both] for himself and for them. On his own and their behalf he asks for a decision regarding it from his God and Master, the all-powerful in whose hand is the decision and with whom are all invisible things, and he asks Him to help him to achieve that which is most righteous for him in particular and for the Muslims in general.

11. The Commander of the Faithful has deemed it best to appoint two heirs, so that you may be in the same position as those who were before you, enjoying a respite of ample hope and inner tranquillity, a flourishing state of concord, and a knowledge of the state of affairs which God has established as a protection, rescue, goodness and life for his people and as a humiliation, loss and restraint for every hypocrite and godless person who desires the destruction of this religion and the corruption of its adherents.

[The designation of al-Ḥakam and 'Uthmān]

12. So the Commander of the Faithful has appointed to it al-Ḥakam, son of the Commander of the Faithful, and after him 'Uthmān, son

55 Literally just 'in'.
56 Dhwā 'l-albāb, where the Qur'ān has ūlū 'l-albāb (in fifteen places).
57 Fīma . . . min dhālikā, a general reference to what had just been said.
58 Qur., 18:37.
59 Literally 'in that'.
60 Cf. Qur., passim.
61 Literally 'to make a covenant after a covenant'.
62 Literally just 'in'.
63 Cf. Qur., 8:1.
of the Commander of the Faithful. Both of them are persons of whom the Commander of the Faithful hopes that God has created them for this purpose and fashioned them for it, perfecting in them the most goodly virtues of those whom He appoints to it in respect of plenitude of insight, soundness of religion, superabundance of manliness and knowledge of what is right. And the Commander of the Faithful has spared no effort or good action on your behalf or his own in this matter.

13. So give allegiance to al-Ḥakam, son of the Commander of the Faithful, and to his brother after him, [undertaking to] hear and to obey. In so doing, reflect upon [the reward of] the best of what God used to show you and bestow on you and accustom you to, and what He has acquainted you with in similar situations in the past by way of extensive prosperity, general good and mighty bounty, into the ampleness, security, blessing, safety and protection of which you have passed. This is a matter which you have deemed slow in coming and to which you have tried to hurry. You have praised God for causing it to come to pass and for decreeing it for you, // and you have burst out with thanks regarding it, deeming it to be a good fortune for you. You hasten towards it, and you exert yourselves in the fulfilment of God's claim upon you; for so much of God's blessing, generosity and good apportioning has come to you in the past that you are disposed to want it and desire it in the measure that God has favoured and benefitted you with it.

14. Further, if something should befall one of his two successors, the Commander of the Faithful is entitled to put in his place and position whoever he may wish to put there from among community or his sons and give priority to him over the survivor if he so wishes, or to place him after him. So know that and understand it. We ask God, apart from whom there is no god, and who has knowledge of the unseen and the visible, the merciful and the compassionate, to bless the Commander of the Faithful and you in that which He has decreed

64 According to the Aghānī, vol. vii, p. 704, al-Walid gave precedence to 'Uthmān. This is an inference from a widely cited poem attributed to al-Walid himself, which is cited there too and according to which 'we hope for 'Uthmān after al-Walid'. But one version adds 'or Ḥakam', and the poem is not by al-Walid in any case (cf. his Shi'r, pp. 147f., where full references are given).
65 Wafā' al-ra'ya wa-ṣīḥat al-dīn wa-jazālat al-muruwwa wa'l-ma'rifa bi-ṣāliḥ al-umūr.
66 Reading rakhā'īhi for rajā'īhi.
67 Aḥdathum fihi shukrān, an expression conveying suddenness and impulsivity. Ajdaytum is possible, if less likely.
68 Literally 'there has come to you in the past of God's grace...what'.
69 It is notable that al-Walid considers the possibility of selecting a successor from among his umma, viz. somebody who need not apparently be an Umayyad or even a Qurashi.
at his tongue and determined to this effect,\textsuperscript{71} and to make its outcome well-being, happiness, and joy. For that is in His hand; nobody but He controls it, and from Him alone can it be petitioned.

15. Peace and the mercy of God be upon you. Written by Samāl, Tuesday, 21 Rajab, in the year 125 [= 20 May, 743].

The letter of Yazīd III

Yazīd III’s letter to the people of Iraq is to be found in al-Ṭabarî (ser. ii, pp. 1843ff., \textit{sub anno} 126; also reproduced in Ṣafwat, \textit{Rasā’il}, vol. ii, pp. 465ff.), and al-Baladhuri (\textit{Ans.} (MS), vol. ii, fols. 170a–b, where the date is given as 28 Rajab, 126 = 15 May 744, and the scribe is named as Thābit b. Sulaymān b. Sa‘īd (read Sa‘d), i.e. the chief of Yazīd’s \textit{dīwān al-rasā’il} (see Tab., ser ii, p. 847)). The two versions differ considerably in a number of places, and at least one of them, possibly both, must be based on oral sources. Our translation renders al-Ṭabarî’s text (for which al-Mada‘ini is once more named as the authority); we indicate only significant variants in al-Baladhuri’s version.

1843 ‘God chose Islam as a religion, approved of it and purified it, and He stipulated in it certain dues which He enjoined, and He prohibited [other] things which He made forbidden, in order to test His servants in respect of their obedience and disobedience. He perfected in it every good virtue and great bounty. Then He\textsuperscript{72} took charge of it, preserving it and acting as guardian of those who observed His \textit{hudūd}, protecting them and making them cognisant of the merit of Islam. God does not honour with the caliphate anyone who observes the command of God and draws near to Him, whereupon someone opposes him with a covenant or attempts\textsuperscript{73} to take away what God has given him, or a violator violates, but that [such a person’s] guile is [rendered] very weak and his cunning most defective, so that God may complete what He has given to [the caliph] and store up a recompense and reward for him, making his enemy most prone to lose his way and most apt to forfeit his acts. So the caliphs of God followed one another as guardians of His religion, judging in it according to His decree, // following the book in it. In all this they received from Him by way of His support and help that which completed the favours bestowed

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{71} Note that al-Walīd is taking out a double insurance policy: he wants God to bless the decision (thus acknowledging that it is his own) \textit{and} he credits it to God Himself (thus obviating the need for a blessing).
\item \textsuperscript{72} \textit{Thumma tawallāhu}. B. adds \textit{Allāh}. Yet one would have expected the letter to introduce the caliphs at this point (\textit{thumma wallāhu khalifatahu} or something similar): the \textit{khalīfa} appears in the following line as something already introduced.
\item \textsuperscript{73} Reading \textit{yuhāwilu} with B. and Ṣafwat for \textit{bi-hulāl}.
\end{itemize}
upon them, and God was pleased with them for it \(i.e.\) the caliphate) until Hishām died.\(^{74}\)

Then the office\(^{75}\) passed to the enemy of God\(^{76}\) al-Walīd, the violator of sacred things on a scale not perpetrated by either a Muslim or an unbeliever [since both would desire] to preserve themselves from committing such things. And when [news of that] spread abroad and it became publicly known and misfortune was intensified and blood spilt on his account, and assets were taken wrongfully, along with [other] abominations which God will not let people commit for long. I went to him with\(^{77}\) the expectation that he would mend his ways\(^{78}\) and apologise to God and to the Muslims, disavowing his behaviour and the acts of disobedience to God which he had dared to commit, seeking from God the completion of that which I had in mind by way of setting straight the pillar of the religion and holding to that which is pleasing among its people. Ultimately, I came to\(^{79}\) an army [of men] whose breasts were enraged against the enemy of God, on account of what they had seen of his behaviour, for\(^{80}\) [this] enemy of God could not see any of God's statutes without wanting to change them and act contrary to what God has revealed.\(^{81}\) He did this publicly, generally and quite openly. God placed no screen around it and [did] not [cause] anyone to doubt it. I mentioned to them what I loathed and what I feared by way of corruption of both the religion and this world, and I spurred them on to put their religion to rights and protect it, they [at first] being doubtful about that, having feared that they were merely saving themselves in what they were undertaking until I called upon them to change it.

Then they hastened to respond and God sent a deputation made up of the best\(^{82}\) of those of them possessed of religion and what is pleasing, and I sent 'Abd al-'Azīz b. al-Hajjāj b. 'Abd al-Malik in charge of them. [He went forth with them] until he met the enemy of God near a village\(^{83}\) called al-Bakhrah. They called upon him\(^{84}\) to set up a shūrā in which the Muslims\(^{85}\) might consider for themselves whom

\(^{74}\) This sentence is missing in B.

\(^{75}\) Al-amr, cf. chapter 5, note 47.

\(^{76}\) 'Aduww Allāh, to be contrasted with khalīf at Allāh.

\(^{77}\) B. reads bāda in place of mā'a.

\(^{78}\) Intīṣār murājadatihi.

\(^{79}\) B. reads wāfaqtu in place of ataytu.

\(^{80}\) From this point to the end of the paragraph, B.'s account is much briefer and different in much of its wording.

\(^{81}\) I.e. a scriptural definition of shārā'I; but B. reads baddalā ... amr Allāh wa-sunan nabiyyihi.

\(^{82}\) Reading bi-khayrihim in place of yukhbiruhum (the text of B. differs at this point).

\(^{83}\) B. adds min qurā Ḥims.

\(^{84}\) B. reads fa-da'dāhu in place of fa-da'awhu.

\(^{85}\) B. reads fuqahā' al-muslimin wa-ṣulahā'uhum.
to invest [with authority] from among those they agreed on; but the enemy of God did not agree to that.\textsuperscript{86} So, in ignorance of God, he hastened to attack them, but found \textit{\textit{\textit{//}}} that God is mighty and wise and that His grip is strong and painful.\textsuperscript{87} So God killed him for his evil behaviour and those of his agnates too who were with him, forming his vile retinue. They did not reach ten [in number], and the rest of those who were with him accepted the truth to which they were called.\textsuperscript{88} So God extinguished his \textit{\textit{\textit{jamra}}}\textsuperscript{89} and relieved His servants of him: good riddance to him and those who follow his path! I have desired to inform you of that, and to do so quickly, so that you may praise God and give thanks to Him. You are now in a prime position, since your rulers are from among your best men and equity is spread out for you, nothing being done contrary to it among you.

So multiply your praise of your Lord for that and take the oath of allegiance\textsuperscript{90} [to the Commander of the Faithful]\textsuperscript{91} with Manṣūr b. Jumhūr,\textsuperscript{92} with whom I am satisfied for you,\textsuperscript{93} on the understanding that the compact of God and His covenant and the mightiest of what has been compacted and covenanted on any one of His creation are upon you. Listen to and obey me and whoever I may depute to succeed me from those upon whom the community agrees. You have the same undertaking from me: I shall act among you in accordance with the command of God and the \textit{\textit{\textit{sunna}}} of His prophet, and I shall follow the way of the best of those who have gone before you. We ask God, our Lord and Master, for the best of His granting of success and the best of His decree'.

\textsuperscript{86} B. omits the second part of this sentence (from `whom to invest . . .').
\textsuperscript{87} B. omits this sentence.
\textsuperscript{88} B. omits this sentence.
\textsuperscript{89} Apparently a play on the two senses of the term: `burning coal' and `band'.
\textsuperscript{90} Reading \textit{\textit{\textit{bāyiū}}} (with B. and Şafwat) in place of \textit{\textit{\textit{tābi'ū}}.}
\textsuperscript{91} This is from B.
\textsuperscript{92} Who had been appointed by Yazīd to the governorship of Iraq.
\textsuperscript{93} From this point to the end of the paragraph, B.'s account is much briefer than that of Tab. and there is practically no coincidence of wording.
Appendix 3

Abū Ḥamza’s comments on the caliphs

The following remarks are reported to have formed part of a sermon (or perhaps more than one) delivered by the Khārijī Abū Ḥamza al-Mukhtar b. ‘Awf in the course of his rebel activities in the Ḥijāz at the very end of the Umayyad period. There is confusion in the sources on certain points of detail, e.g. whether he delivered a sermon (or sermons) only in Mecca, or only in Medina, or in both places, and whether he did so in 129/746f., or in 130/747f., or in both years. The text translated here is essentially that given by BAL., *Ans.* (MS), vol. ii, fols. 188a–189a, but §11 and the portions of §§10 and 12 enclosed within bold square brackets are taken from the version given by al-Izkawī, *Kashf*, pp. 391–4; other versions can be found in al-Jāḥiz, *al-Bayān wa’l-tabyīn*, ed. ‘A.-S. M. Hārūn Cairo 1960–1, vol. ii, pp. 122–4; al-Azdi, *Ta’rikh Mawsil*, pp. 104f.; Aghānī, vol. xxiii, pp. 241–3; Ibn Abī ‘l-Hadīd, *Sharḥ*, vol. v, pp. 117–19. More detailed work on the Abū Ḥamza material is desirable: in the meantime, see T. Lewicki, ‘Les Ibbadites dans l’Arabie du sud au moyen âge’. *Folia Orientalia* 1 (1959); J. van Ess, ‘Das “Kitāb al-Irgā” des Ḥasan b. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafiyya’, *Arabica* 21 (1974), pp. 41f.; Cook, *Dogma*, p. 166, n. 29.

1. O people! The Messenger of God used neither to advance nor to draw back save with the command of God and His revelation. [God] revealed a book to him and made clear to him what he should undertake and what he should guard against, and he was in no way confused about His religion. Then God took him to Himself, after he had taught the Muslims the waymarks of His religion and had placed Abū Bakr in charge of their ritual prayer and [after] the pillar of their religion had become lofty.

2. When the Muslims put him (Abū Bakr) in charge of their temporal concerns. He fought the apostates and acted by the *kitāb* and the *sunna*, striving, until God took him to Himself, may God’s mercy be upon him.
3. 'Umar took charge after him. He proceeded according to the mode of conduct (sira) of him who had gone before him. He collected the fay', assigned stipends, established amšār and diwāns, gathered the people in night prayer in the month of Ramaḍān, gave out eighty stripes for wine-drinking, and campaigned in enemy territory. Then he passed on his way, on the path of his companion, having left it (i.e. the matter of the caliphate) to be determined by consultation, may God's mercy be upon him.

4. Then 'Uthmān took charge. For six years he proceeded in a way which fell short of the mode of conduct of his two companions. Then he [acted in a manner which] annulled what he had done earlier, and passed on his way.

5. Then 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib took charge. He acted in a proper manner until he established arbitration concerning the book of God and had doubts about His religion. [Thereafter] he did not achieve any goal in respect of what was right, nor did he erect any beacon for that.

6. Then there took charge Mu‘āwiyah b. Abī Sufyān, who had been cursed by the Messenger of God and was the son of one so cursed. He made the servants of God slaves, the property of God something to be taken by turns, and His religion a cause of corruption. Then he passed on his way, deviating from what was right, deceiving in religion.

7. Then there took charge his son Yazīd, part of [the object of] the curse of the Messenger of God, a sinner in respect of his belly and his private parts. He kept to the path of his father, neither acknowledging what ought to be acknowledged nor disavowing what ought to be disavowed.

8. Then Marwān and the Banū Marwān took charge. They shed forbidden blood and devoured forbidden property. As for 'Abd al-Malik, he made al-Ḥajjāj an imām of his, leading to hellfire. As for al-Walīd, he was a stupid fool, at a loss in [his] waywardness, abusing it (i.e. the caliphate) with benighted senselessness. And Sulaymān, what was Sulaymān?! His concern was with his belly and his private parts. So curse them, may God curse them! Except that 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz was from [among] them: he had [good] intentions and did not act [upon them]; he fell short of what he intended.

---

1 Qiyyām shahr ramaḍān, i.e. holding the night prayers which came to be called tarāwīh (see EP, s.v.).
3 Reading fadīd in place of faṣīṣ (see Lane, Lexicon, s.v. fadād).
4 Cf. the words attributed to 'Umar b. Ḍābi': hamamtu wa-lam as al wa-kitdu wa-layant... (Tab., ser. ii, p. 869; Ibn 'Asākir, Tahdhib, vol. iv, p. 57 (where the words are wrongly ascribed to his father)).
9. Then there took charge after him Yazid b. 'Abd al-Malik, a sinner in whom right judgement was not perceived. God has said concerning orphans, 'Then, if you perceive in them right judgement, deliver their property to them':

7 Then, when he had become drunk and the wine had taken a hold on him, he rent his two garments, which had been acquired for one thousand dinars- [dinars] on account of which skins had been flayed, hair shaved off, and veils torn away; he took what he spent on [those two garments] unlawfully and wrongfully. Then he turned to one of [the girls] and said, 'Surely I shall fly! Most certainly! Fly to hellfire! Is such supposed to be the distinguishing characteristic of the caliphs of God?!'

10. Then the squint-eyed Hishām took charge. He scattered stipends about and appropriated the fay': he made all of the fay' of the Muslims that was pleasant and salubrious into [something promoting] his [own] glory- may he enjoy no pleasure! I was present at [the reading out of] a letter which Hishām wrote to you concerning a drought: I was present at [the reading out of] a letter which Hishām wrote to you concerning a drought which had occurred. With it (i.e. the letter) he pleased you and angered his Lord, [for] in it he mentioned that he left [the matter of] the alms tax to you. This made the rich among you richer and the poor poorer.

5 Qur., 4:5.
6 Izār signifies ‘waist-wrapper’, while ridā’ signifies ‘garment covering the upper half of the body’ (Lane, Lexicon, s.vv.; cf. Ep, s.v. ‘libās’).
7 For the background of these two slavegirls, see Aghānī, vols. viii, pp. 334–351 and xv, pp. 122–146, where, however, no reference is made to this particular incident. It seems that it was al-Walīd II who was above all given to tearing off his garments and plunging naked into a pool of wine (ibid., vol. iii, p. 308).
8 A-fa-hākadhā šifat khulafā’ Allāh; al-Azdi omits the initial a-, while the ‘Iqd (vol. iv, pp. 146f., whose compiler, having said that he will spare us what Abū Ḥamza had to say about the caliphs, nonetheless cannot resist the temptation to relay this piece of scandal about fulān b. fulān min ‘adad al-khulafā’ ‘indakum) reads fa-hāhīhi šifat khulafā’ Allāh ta’ālā. The versions appearing in al-Jāhiz, Aghānī, Ibn Abī ’l-Ḥadid and al-Izkawī fail to preserve any reference to khulafā’ Allāh at this point; but Ibn Abī ’l-Ḥadid does record that elsewhere in his sermon Abū Ḥamza said: alā tarawna ilā khilāfat Allāh wa-imāmat al-muslimīn kayfa wati’? (Sharḥ, vol. v, p. 117).
9 This bracketed passage occurs only in al-Izkawī.
10 Correctly ḥātma in al-Izkawī: the copyist of Bal. reads kh.tma, while the editor of al-Azdi reads hīṭa. The whole section from the beginning of this sentence to the end of the paragraph is missing from the versions given by al-Jāhiz and Ibn Abī ’l-Ḥadid; it is given in a different context by the Aghānī (vol. xxiii, p. 237), where ‘āha fi thimārikum stands in place of ḥātma (cf. Tab., ser. ii, p. 2009).
and you said, ‘May God reward him with good.’ Nay! May God reward him with evil! He was miserly with his wealth and niggardly in his religion.

11. [Then the sinner al-Walid b. Yazid took charge. He drank wine openly and he deliberately made manifest what is abominable. Then Yazid b. al-Walid rose against him and killed him: God has said, ‘So We make the evildoers friends of each other for what they have earned.’ Then Marwän b. Muhammad took charge and claimed the caliphate. He abraded faces, put out eyes, and cut off hands and feet. How amazing is your satisfaction with the sons of Umayya, the sons of the alîq, the sons of the accursed one! Curse him (i.e. Marwän), may God curse him!].

12. These Banû Umayya are parties of waywardness. Their might is self-magnification. They arrest on suspicion, make decrees capriciously, kill in anger, and judge by passing over crimes without punishment. They take the alms tax from the incorrect source and make it over to the wrong people. God has made clear the eight categories [of recipients of sadaqa]. Then there came a ninth category which had no right to them. [It set itself in the midst of [those who did have a right] and said, ‘The land is our land, the property is our property, and the people are our slaves’]. It took all. That is the party which decrees other than what God has sent down, (and God has said, ‘Who so decrees not according to what God has sent down, they are the unbelievers, the evildoers and the sinners’). The[se] people have acted as unbelievers, by God, in the most barefaced manner. So curse them, may God curse them!].

12 Reading ‘al-Walid’ in place of ‘Khilid’.
13 Qur., 6: 129 (the kadhlika preceding qala ‘llâh has been disregarded as dittography).
14 I.e. one brought within the pale of Islam against his will (Lane, Lexicon, s.v.), in this case presumably the Marwânîd forbear al-Hasham b. Abî ‘l-‘Âs.
15 The whole of this bracketed paragraph occurs only in al-Izkawi.
17 Qur., 9: 60.
18 This bracketed passage occurs only in al-Izkawi.
19 See Qur., 5: 48–51.
20 Reading k. l. h. m. s. l. â as kafrâtnân salâ (we are indebted to Professor Ihsân ‘Abbâs for this suggestion).
21 This bracketed passage occurs only in al-Izkawi.
Appendix 4

al-Ma’mūn’s letter of designation of ʿAlī al-Riḍā as his successor

This document was translated into Italian over fifty years ago by F. Gabrieli (Al-Ma’mūn e gli ‘Alidi, pp. 38–43), who relied on the versions transmitted by Sībīṣ b. al-Jawzī (Mirʿāt al-zamān, MS. Par. ar. 5903, fols. 149a–151a) and al-Qalqashandī (Ṣubḥ, vol. ix, pp. 362–6). Al-Qalqashandī’s version, which has also been published by Ṣafwat (Rasā’il, vol. iii, pp. 405–9), is stated to have been taken from ‘ṣāḥib al-‘Iqḍ’; but, as Gabrieli noted, it is not to be found in the various printed editions of al-‘Iqḍ al-farīd by Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihī. In making this English translation, we have relied on the printed texts of al-Qalqashandī and on Gabrieli’s notes of variant readings in Sībīṣ b. al-Jawzī’s version. The document was written while al-Ma’mūn was at the town of Marw, in Khūrāsān, and Sībīṣ b. al-Jawzī’s version of it terminates with the information that it was written on 7 Ramaḍān 201 = 29 March 817, i.e. five days after a similar document had been despatched to al-Ḥasan b. Sahl in Iraq (Tab., ser. iii, p. 1013). It is clear that the document we have here was intended to be proclaimed in Medina (see paragraph 9): since official news of the designation did not reach Baghdad until 24 Dhū ‘l-Hijja 201 = 13 July 817 (Tab., ser. iii, p. 1014) and only reached Egypt in the following month (al-Kindī, Governors, p. 168), it is hardly likely to have reached Medina any earlier than that same period.

The numbers in the margin refer to the text as it appears in the Ṣubḥ. We are grateful to Dr G. H. A. Juynboll for comments on a draft of this translation.

362 1. This is a document1 written by ʿAbdallāh b. Hārūn al-Rashīd, the Commander of the Faithful, in his [own] hand, for ʿAlī b. Mūsā b. Jaʿfar, his successor by covenant.

1 Kitāb.
2. To continue: God, great and mighty is He, selected Islam as a religion and selected for it from among His servants messengers to direct and lead others to it, the first of these messengers conveying the good news to the last of them, and those of them who came later confirming the veracity of those who had gone before. Ultimately the prophethood of God reached Muhammad, at a time of interval between messengers, obliteration of knowledge, cessation of revelation, and proximity of the Hour. Through him God sealed the prophets, making him their witness, and to him He revealed His mighty book — ‘falsehood comes not to it from before it nor from behind it, a revelation from One all-wise, all-laudable’, in which there is what He permitted and prohibited, promised and threatened, warned of and cautioned about, and enjoined and forbade, so that He might have the conclusive argument over His creation, and ‘so that whosoever perishes may do so by a clear sign, and by a clear sign may he live who lives; surely God is all-hearing, all-knowing’. [Muhammad] transmitted God's message on His behalf, and called to His path, first of all with the wisdom, good admonition and disputation in the better way which He had enjoined upon him, and then with holy war and severity, until God took him back unto Himself, and chose for him what is with Him (i.e. in Paradise), may God bless him.

3. When the prophethood came to an end, and with Muhammad — may God bless and preserve him — God sealed revelation and the message,
He made the mainstay of the religion and the ordering of the government (amr) of the Muslims [reside] in the caliphate, [in all] its fullness and might, and [in] the implementation of that to which God is entitled [respect of] it (i.e. the caliphate) through that obedience with which God's ordinances (farā'īd) and restrictive statutes (ḥudūd), as well as the laws (ṣharāʾī) of Islam and its norms (Sunan), are established and his enemy is fought. It is incumbent upon the caliphs of God to obey Him regarding such of His religion and of His servants as are placed by Him in their keeping and care; and it is incumbent upon the Muslims to obey their caliphs and to help them to establish God's justice and His equity, to make the highways safe and prevent bloodshed, and to create a state of concord and unity of fellowship. Remissness in that occasions disturbance of the rope of the Muslims, disorder among them, variance within their confessional entity, oppression of their religion, superiority of their enemy, diversity in what they profess, and the forfeiture of this world and the world to come.

4. It is incumbent upon him whom God has deputed on His earth and has entrusted with authority over His creation that he [exert himself for God and] prefer that in which God's pleasure and obedience to Him [are occasioned], act justly in that with which God may acquaint him and about which He may question him, judge with what is right, and act with justice in that with which God has charged and invested him. God, great and mighty is He, says to His prophet David, may peace be upon him. //

O David, we have made you a khalīfa on earth: so judge between people justly, and follow not caprice, lest it lead you astray from the way of God. Surely those who go astray from the way of God—there awaits them terrible chastisement, for that they have forgotten the day of reckoning.

12 While al-Walīd's letter refers to the sunna/sunan of God, here the sunan are those of Islam.
14 Sibt b. al-Jawzī reads wa-fī ḥiṣāf dhālīka where al-Qalqashandi reads wa-fī ikhīlāl dhālīka.
16 Ikhtīlāf millathīm.
17 There is fairly close correspondence between this sentence and the fourth sentence of §5 of al-Walīd's letter.
18 Reading va-ittamanahu (deleting the hamzat al-qāf' on the alif and reading a shadda on the tā', in place of the typographical errors in the text as it appears in the Subh).
19 This addition is given by Sibt b. al-Jawzī.
20 Qur., 38:25.
and He said, great and mighty is He, ‘Now by your Lord, We shall surely question them all together concerning what they were doing.’

It has reached us that 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb said, ‘If a lamb were to stray beside the Euphrates, I should be fearful lest God might ask me about it’ and, by God, anyone who is asked about his individual self and is interrogated about his deeds in [respect of] his relationship with God is exposed to [a scrutiny of] the greatest significance; how much [more] is he who is interrogated about the care of the umma [exposed to divine scrutiny]? [But] trust is in God, in Him is the refuge ([māfza‘]), and [He it is who fulfils] the wish that success may be granted, along with refuge (iṣma), and [the wish for] right guidance to that in which the [definitive] proof resides; victory [comes] from God through favour and compassion.

[The Importance of Covenanting the Succession]

5. He of the imams who is most watchful of himself and is most sincere regarding His religion, His servants, and His caliphate on His earth, is he who acts in obedience to God and [in accordance with] His book and the sunna of His prophet - may peace be upon him - throughout the days [of his reign] and exerts himself using his intelligence (ra‘y) and perspicacity concerning the one to whom he covenants the succession, the one he chooses for the leadership (imāma) and care of the Muslims after him, the one he sets up as a waymark (‘a‘am) for them and a refuge (māfza‘) for uniting their fellowship and bringing them together after their dispersal, sparing their blood, securing them – with God’s permission – from disunity, disturbance of concord, and variance, and removing from them the insinuation and artfulness of Satan. God, great and mighty is He, has made the covenanting of the caliphate part of the completion, perfection and might of the government of Islam and the well-being of its people. In His making sovereign of him whom His caliphs choose for Him [to succeed them], God has inspired them with something in which there is great blessing and all-encompassing security, and He has thereby

21 Qur., 15:92f.
22 Cf. al-Walid’s letter, §§7-9, which has a great deal more to say on this subject.
23 There is a fairly close correspondence between this passage (from ‘refuge’ (māfza‘) to ‘Satan’) and part of the second sentence of §7 of al-Walid’s letter (see also notes 43 and 45 thereto).
25 Cf. al-Walid’s letter (§8), where ‘the matter of this covenant is part of the completion of Islam and the perfection of those mighty favours by which God makes His people obliged to Him . . .’
untwisted the rope (marr) of the people of schism and enmity, [those
given to] striving for disunity and looking out for^ sedition.

[The exertions of al-Ma'mūn himself]²⁸

6. The Commander of the Faithful has not ceased [to exert himself in
this regard]²⁸ since the caliphate passed to him and he experienced its
dry and bitter taste, the weight of its load and the severity of its burden,
and what is incumbent upon him who takes it upon himself by way
of cleaving to obedience to God and fearing His punishment in respect
of that with which He has charged him. He has wearied // his body,
has caused his eye to be sleepless, and has given prolonged thought
to that [matter] in which [there are at stake] the might of the religion,
the subduing of polytheists, the well-being of the umma, the spreading
of justice, and the maintaining of the book and the sunna; and [all of]
that has denied him tranquillity and repose in a life of ease.³⁰ [He has
done so] cognisant of that about which God will question him and
desiring to meet God in a state of sincerity to Him³¹ in respect of His
religion and His servants, choosing for the succession by his covenant
and for the care of the umma after him the most excellent person
possible in terms of religion, piety and knowledge and the one from
whom the most can be hoped for in implementing God's commandment
and right. [He has done so] communing with God in a desire for His
blessing in that [regard] and asking Him day and night to inspire him
with that in which His pleasure and obedience to Him [are to be found],
employing his mind and insight in his quest and his search among³²
his ahl bayt from the descendants of 'Abdallāh b. al-'Abbās and 'Alī
b. Abi Ṭālib, satisfying himself with what he knew of those whose
situation and persuasion (madhhab) he knew [already]³³ and exerting
effort and energy in enquiring about those whose circumstances were
not known to him, until he penetrated deeply into their affairs with
his perception, put information about them to the test before his own
eyes, and discovered by interrogation what they were about.

27 Preferring Sibt b. al-Jawzī's al- tarabbls to al-Qalqashandi's al-rafīd.
28 Cf. §1 of al-Walid's letter, where 'ever since God deputed him, the Commander
of the Faithful has not had a greater preoccupation or concern than this
covenant...'.
29 Added by us; as Ṣafwat points out, the sense is obvious from the context.
30 Sibt b. al-Jawzī reads al-ḥifz wa'l-ḍa'a wa-mahnū al-aysh where al-Qalqashandi
reads al-khaft wa'l-ḍa'a bi-ḥaniyy al-aysh. The sentence as a whole to some extent
reflects §11 of al-Walid's letter.
31 Sibt b. al-Jawzī reads munāsiḥān where al-Qalqashandi reads munāṣihahu.
32 Preferring Sibt b. al-Jawzī's fi to al-Qalqashandi's min.
33 Sibt b. al-Jawzī's reading muqtaṣīr fī- man alīma hālāhu wa-madhhabahu minhum
'ālā 'l-haqq ilmān is judged by Gabrieli to be 'assai piu confuso' than al-
Qalqashandi's muqaṣārīn fī- man alīma hālāhu wa-madhhabahu minhum 'ālā
ilmīhī.
[The Designation of 'Ali al-Riḍā]^{34}

7. His choice – after having sought God's blessing and having exerted himself in the decree of His right among His servants^{35} from the two families as a whole – has been 'Ali b. Mūṣā b. Ja'far b. Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib, on account of what he has seen of his perfect excellence, his clear knowledge, his manifest godliness, his genuine abstinence, his leaving off of this world, and his assertion of freedom from the people. What has become clear to [the Commander of the Faithful] is that upon which reports continue to agree, tongues concur, and opinion is unanimous; and, on account of his knowledge of his (i.e. 'Alī's) consistent excellence, as a boy, an adolescent, a young man, and a mature man, he has covenanted to him the covenant and the caliphate,^{36} in preference of God and the religion, out of regard for the Muslims, and in search of safety, firmness of proof, and salvation on the day when people will stand for the Lord of the worlds.

8. The Commander of the Faithful has summoned his sons, his family (ahl baytihī), his intimates, his generals and his servants, and they have given allegiance to him (i.e. 'Alī), hastening^{37} and joyous, knowing the Commander of the Faithful's preference for obedience to God rather than caprice among his [own] sons and others to whom he (al-Ma'mūn) is more closely related; and he has called him al-Riḍā, since he is, in the view of the Commander of the Faithful, 'one who has found favour' (riḍā).^{38}

366 9. So give allegiance,^{39} O members of the family of the Commander of the Faithful, and those of his generals and troops who are in Medina the [well-] protected,^{40} and the generality of the Muslims, to al-Riḍā^{41}

---

34 Here §7 reflects §12 of al-Walīd's letter (the good qualities of the persons designated) and §9 reflects §13 of al-Walīd's letter (the bounty etc. which will arise from the giving of allegiance).

35 Following Sibt b. al-Jawzī's fi 'ibādihi in preference to al-Qalqashandi's wa-biidihi.

36 Sibt b. al-Jawzī reads fa-aqada lahu 'l-aḥd wa'l-wilāya min bā'idihi wāthiqa\nbi-khiyarat Allāh fi dhālīka idh 'alima 'lāh min fi'lihi where al-Qalqashandi simply reads fa-aqada lahu bi'l-aqiq wa'l-khiyāfa.

37 Sibt b. al-Jawzī reads musārīn where al-Qalqashandi reads musri'īn.

38 Preferring Sibt b. al-Jawzī's wa-sammāhu 'l-rādīd idh kāna rida\n to al-Qalqashandi's wa-sammāhu 'l-rādiyyā dh kāna rādiyya\n. The term rīdā was of course highly evocative, the slogan of the movement which brought the 'Abbāsid s to power having been a call to the book of God, the sunna of His prophet, and al-rīdā min ahl al-bayt (see above, chapter 5, note 9).

39 Sibt b. al-Jawzī reads fa-bāyi'īhu where al-Qalqashandi reads fa-bāyi'ū.

40 As Gabrieli notes, it is thus clear that this particular copy of the designation document was intended to be proclaimed in Medina.

41 Sibt b. al-Jawzī reads li-amīr al-mu'minin wa'l-rīdā where al-Qalqashandi reads simply al-rādiyyā.
after him, in the name of God and His blessing and the goodness of His decree for His religion and His servants, an oath for which you [willingly] stretch out your hands and to which your hearts are joyously disposed. [Do so] being cognisant of what the Commander of the Faithful has thereby desired, having preferred in it (i.e. the giving of allegiance) obedience to God and regard for himself as well as for you. [Do so] thanking God for His counsel, with which He has inspired the Commander of the Faithful in [the matter of] taking care of you, and for His solicitude for your guidance (rushd) and well-being (ṣalāḥ), and hoping for the benefit of that,\(^{42}\) by way of the uniting of your fellowship, the sparing of your blood, the bringing of you together after dispersal, the defence of your frontier-ways of access, the strength of your religion, the subduing\(^ {43}\) of your enemy, and the good state of your affairs. Hasten to obedience to God and obedience to the Commander of the Faithful. It is a matter in which, if you hasten to it and praise God for it, you will know good fortune, God willing.\(^ {44}\)

\(^{42}\) Preferring Sibt b. al-Jawzī's 'ā'idat dhālika to al-Qalqashandi's 'ā'idahu fi dhālika.

\(^{43}\) Preferring Sibt b. al-Jawzī's qam' to al-Qalqashandi's raghm.

\(^{44}\) Sibt b. al-Jawzī adds, 'Written by his [own] hand on 7 Ramaḍān, 201 [= 29 March, 817]'.

`Abdallāh b. al-Zabīr al-Asadī (d. 75/694), Shi`r, ed. Y. al-Jubūrī, Baghdad 1974.


`Abd al-Malik b. Ḥabīb (d. 238/852), Ta`rikh, MS. Bodley, Marsh. 288.


`Abd al-Razzāq b. Hammām al-Ṣan`ānī (d. 275/888), Sunan, Cairo 1952.


Abel, A., `Le khalife, présence sacrée`, Studia Islamica 7(1957).

Abū Dāwūd, Sulaymān b. al-Ash`ath (d. 275/888), Sunan, Cairo 1952.


Aghānī, see al-Īsfahānī.


Ajbar Machmu`ā, ed. E. Lafuente y Alcántara, Madrid 1867.


al-Akhtal, Ghiyāth b. Ghawth al-Ṭaghlibī (d. before 92/710), Dīwān, ed. A. Šālḥānī, Beirut 1891.
Works cited


Amin, Ahmad, Ḍuḥā ʿl-islām, vol. 1, Cairo 1933.


al-Barrādī, Abū ʾl-Qāsim b. Ibrāhīm (8th/14th cent.), Kitāb al-jawāhir, Cairo 1302.


Bashshār b. Burd (d. 167/783), Ḫūṣn, ed. M. al-Ṭāhir b. ʿĀshūr, Cairo 1950–.


al-Bayḍāwī, ʿAbdallāh b. ʿUmar (d. 685/1286 or later), Anwār al-tanzīl wa-asrār al-ṭaʿwil, Istanbul n.d.


Boucher, R. (ed. and tr.), Divan de Férazdak, Paris 1870.


142 Works cited


Crone, P., ‘Did al-Ghazālī Write a Mirror for Princes?’, forthcoming in *Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam*, no. VI.


al-Dahhās, see Al Dahas.

al-Damīrī, Muḥammad b. Mūsā (d. 808/1405), *Ḥayāt al-ḥayawān*, Būlāq 1284.


al-Farazdaq, Tammām b. Ghālib (d. prob. 112/730), *Ḍīwān*, ed. M. I. ‘A. al-Šāwī, Cairo 1936 (references are to this edition unless otherwise indicated); Beirut 1960; see also Boucher.


*id.*, *al-Maʾrūn e gli ’Alidi*, Leipzig 1929.


*id.*, *Ihyaʾ ʿulūm al-dīn*, Cairo 1282.

*id.*, *Naṣḥāṭ al-mulāk*², ed. J. Humāʾi, Tehran 1351 (shamsī); trans. by F. R. C. Bagley, *Ghazālī’s Book of Counsels for Kings*, Oxford 1964; where two page references are given, the first is to the edition and the second to the translation.


*id.*, *Muslim Studies*, London 1967–71 (references are to the pagination of the German original).

*id.*, *Streitschrift des Gaziili gegen die Bāṭiniyya-Sekte*, Leiden 1916.


id., ‘Maghāzī’ and ‘Sīrā’ in Early Islamic Scholarship’ in La vie du prophète Mahomet, Colloque de Strasbourg (octobre 1980), Paris 1983.


Works cited

id., Usd al-ghāba fī mārifat al-ṣahāba, Cairo 1285–6.


id., Man lā yahdūruru ‘l-faqīh, ed. Ḥ. M. al-Kharsān, Tehran 1390 (shamsī).
Ibn Ḥanbal, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad (d. 241/855), Musnad, Cairo 1313.


Ibn Khalūdīn, Abū Zayd Abīd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad (d. 808/1406), Muqaddima, being vol. 1 of al-‘Ibar wa-dīwān al-mubtada’ wa’l-khabar fī ayyām al-arab wa’l-ajam wa’l-barbar wa-man āsharatum min dhawī l-sulṭān al-akbar, Būlāq 1284.
(ps.-) Ibn Qutayba, al-Imāma wa’l-siyāsa, Cairo 1909.
146 Works cited


Ibn al-Zabīr, see ‘Abdalāh b. al-Zabīr.

*Iqd*, see Ibn ‘Abd Rabbihi.


Jarīr b. ‘Atiyāya b. al-Ḫaṭṭāfā (d.110/728), *Dīwān*, ed. M. I. ‘A. al-Ṣāwī, Cairo [1353] (references are to this edition unless otherwise indicated); ed. N. M. A. Ṭāḥā, Cairo 1969–70.


al-Kumayt b. Zayd al-Asadī (d. 126/743), *Die Ḥāšimijjāt des Kumait*, ed. and
tr. J. Horovitz, Leiden 1904; where two page references are given, the first
is to the edition and the second to the translation.
Kuthayyir ‘Azza b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān (d. 105/723), Diwān, ed. I. ‘Abbās,
Beirut 1971.

Lammens, H., ‘Le chantre des Omiades: notes biographiques et littéraires
Laylā al-Akhyaliyya (d. soon after 85/704), Diwān, ed. Kh. I. and J. al-‘Āṭiyya,
Baghdad 1967.
Lewicki, T., ‘Les Ibādites dans l’Arabie du sud au moyen âge’ Folia
id., Islam from the Prophet Muhammad to the Capture of Constantinople, New
York etc. 1974.
id., ‘The Regnal Titles of the First Abbasid Caliphs’, Dr. Zakir Husain
Presentation Volume, New Delhi 1968.

Madelung, W., Der Imam al-Qāsim ibn Ibrāhīm und die Glaubenslehre der
id., ‘New Documents Concerning al-Ma’mūn, al-Fadl b. Sahl and ‘Alī
al-Riḍā’ in Studia Arabica et Islamica; Festschrift for Iḥsān ‘Abbās, ed.
W. al-Qādī, Beirut 1981.
Mālik b. Anas (d. 179/795), al-Muwaṭṭa’, Cairo n.d.
Mallick, M. T., ‘Life and Work of Ibrāhīm b. Ṭahmān (a Traditionist of
al-Maqdisī, Abū Naṣr al-Muṭahhar b. al-Muṭahhar (scrib. 355/966), Kitāb
al-Maqrızī, Taqī al-dīn Ahmad b. ‘Alī (d. 845/1442), al-Nizā’
wāl-takhāṣum fi-mā bayna bani ‘Umayya wa-Bani Ḥāshim, ed. G. Vos,
Leiden 1888.
Margoliouth, D., ‘Omar’s Instructions to the Kadi’, Journal of the Royal
Asiatic Society 1910.
id., ‘The Sense of the Title Khalīfah’ in A Volume of Oriental Studies
Presented to E. G. Browne, Cambridge 1922.
al-Mas‘ūdī, Abū ʿl-Ḥasan ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn (d. 345/956 or 346), Murūj
al-dhahab wa-ma‘ādin al-jawāhir, ed. C. Barbier de Meynard and Pavet de
Courteille, Paris 1861–77; rev. and corr. by C. Pellat, Beirut 1966–79;
references are firstly to the volume and paragraph of Pellat’s edition and
secondly to the volume and page of the Paris edition as given by Pellat.
Michael the Syrian (d. 1199), Chronique, ed. and tr. J.-B. Chabot, Paris 1899–1900.
id., The Numismatic History of Rayy, New York 1938.
Mu‘arrij b. ‘Amr al-Sadūsī (late 2nd/8th cent.), Kitāb hadhf min nasab Quraysh, ed. Ś. al-Munajjid, Cairo 1960.
al-Mu‘ayyad fi l-dīn, Abū Naṣr Hibat Allāh b. al-Ḥusayn (d. 470/1077)
id., Sīrat al-Mu‘ayyad fi l-dīn dātī l-du`āt, tarjamat ḥāyiṭihi bi-qalamīhi,
Muslim b. al-Ḥajjāj b. Muslim (d. 261/875), al-Ṣaḥīḥ, Cairo 1929–30.
Nābighat B. Shaybān, ‘Abdallāh b. al-Muḵhāriq (d. in or after 127/745), Diwān. Cairo 1932.
al-Nahrawānī, Ḥaḍib al-dīn Muḥammad b. ‘Alā‘ al-dīn Aḥmad (d. 990/1582),
Quellen’, Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft 29(1875).

Nu‘aym b. Ḥammād, Abū ‘Abdallāh al-Khuzā‘i (d. 228/843), Kitāb al-fītan, MS British Library, Or. 9449.
al-Nu‘mān b. Muḥammad, see al-Qādī al-Nu‘mān.
al-Nuwayrī, Shihāb al-dīn Aḥmad b. ‘Abd al-Wahhāb (d. 732/1331), Nihāyat al-arab fī funūn al-adab, Cairo 1923–.


Ṣafwat, A. Z., Jamharat khuṭab al-‘arab, Cairo 1933.
id., Jamharat rasā’il al-‘arab, Cairo 1937.
id., An Introduction to Islamic Law, Oxford 1964.
id., ‘Mālik b. Anas’ in EP.
Sebeos (attrib.), Histoire d’Héraclius, tr. F. Macler, Paris 1904.
Works cited

Strothmann, R., Das Staatsrecht der Zaiditen, Strassburg 1912.

Tab., see al-Ṭabarānī, Ta‘rīkh.
Theophanes (d. 817), Chronographia, ed. C. de Boor, Leipzig 1883–5.
al-Ṭūsī, Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan (d. 459/1067 or 460), al-Tibyān fī tafsīr al-Qur‘ān, ed. A. H. Qaṣīr al-‘Āmilī and A.Sh. al-Āmin, Najaf 1957–63.
id., Institutions du droit public musulman, vol. i (Le califat), Paris 1954; vol. ii (Sultanat et califat), Paris 1956.

'Urwa b. Udhayna, Abū 'Āmir (d. ca. 130/748), Shi'r, ed. Y. al-Jubūrī, Baghdad 1970.

al-ʿUyūn waʿl-Ḥadāʾiq, see Kitāb al-ʿuyūn waʿl-ḥadāʾiq.

Vloten, G. van, 'Zur Abbasidengeschichte', Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft 52 (1898).


Wansbrough, J., Quranic Studies: Sources and Methods of Scriptural Interpretation, Oxford 1977.

Watt, W. M., Bell's Introduction to the Qur'ān, Edinburgh 1970.


Wellhausen, J., The Arab Kingdom and its Fall, Calcutta 1927.


al-Yaʿqūbī, ʿAbī ʿAmīr Yaʿqūb (d. 284/897 or 292/905), Ta'rikh, ed. M. T. Houtsma, Leiden 1883.


INDEX

`Abbāsids, 108, 113
and the caliphal title, 13–16, 18
and sunna, 60, 80–96
`Abd al-`Azīz b. al-Ḥājjāj b. `Abd al-Malik, 127
`Abd al-`Azīz b. Marwān, 26
`Abd al-`Azīz b. `Umar, 74
`Abdallāh b. al-`Abbās, 137
`Abdallāh b. Yahyā, 12, 60
`Abd al-Malik, 28, 45, 103
and the caliphal title, 7f., 11
as faqīh, 48f.
maṣūm, 56
`Abd al-Malik b. al-Muhallab, 61
`Abd al-Salīm al-Yashkūrī, 18, 88
Abraham, 31
Abū `I-`Abbās, 13
Abū Bakr, 2, 19f, 22, 111–13, 129
Abū Bakr b. Muḥammad b. Ḥāzm, 74
Abū Ḥamza al-Khaṭīrī, 12, 57, 60, 74,
129–32
Abū Ḥanīfa, 90, 91
Abū Muslim, 16, 84
Abū Ubaydallāh, 88
Abū Yūsuf, 82f, 88, 90, 91, 92, 110
Adam, 4, 17f, 59, 22f, 100
Ādam b. `Abd al-`Azīz b. `Umar, 74
`adl, justice, 36f, 66, 80, 83, 100, 120
`Aḍūd al-dawla, 14f
African rulers, 19
`Alī, 2, 32, 60, 100, 130, 137
`Alī `Abd al-Rāzīq, 97
`Alī al-Riḍā, 94–6, 133–9
al-Amīn, 13
Amīn Allāh, God’s trustee, 5, 16,
17f, 82, 31, 33, 38f, 39f, 80f,
82, 101, 113
Amīr al-mu’minīn, 11, 16
al-Awzā’i, 51
al-Azhar, 97, 98
al-Ḥārūn, 97
Bughā, 41
David, 5, 17f, 21f, 44, 55, 100, 135
and Solomon, 31f, 44, 54, 55f, 56f,
57, 91, 115
dharma, 45
Fāṭimids, 14f, 17, 100
Ghadīr Khumm tradition, 78, [88]
ghayth, 35, 82, 101, 113
al-Ghazālī, 22, 33, 97
Goldziher, 4f.
guidance, see ḥudūd
ḥabl Allāh, God’s rope, 39f., 82, 101,
103, 120
al-Ḥādī (`Abbāsid), 13
al-Ḥādī (Zaydī), 98
al-Ḥaḍījā, 28, 41, 130
al-Ḥakam b. al-Walīd], 124f.
Ḥaṣa al-Khaṭīrī, 89
al-Ḥārīth b. Surayj, 61, 63, 64–6, 73f,
108
Harthama b. A’yan, 89
Hārūn al-Rashīd, 13, 88–90
al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī, 70, 71, 75f, 79,
130
Hindu kings and law, 45, 109
Hishām, 9f., 45, 91, 131
ḥudūd, guidance, 31, 34f., 40, 82, 100
al-Ḥusayn, 60
Ibn al-As’thath, 61
Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya, 103, 104

153
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ḥanbal, 96, 97</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ḥazm, 47, 48, 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Isḥāq, 90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Jurayj, 84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Muqaffa', 82, 85–7, 90f, 92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ṭāhmān, 84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Umar, 67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Zubayr, 12, 20(^{st}), 53, 60f., 62, 68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imām (\text{imām}) al-ḥudā, imām(s) of guidance, 34, 40, 41, 51, 80(^{st}), 85, 90f., 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imāmīs, 2, 99–105, 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʾisma, 5(^{st}), 38f., 14(^{st}) (\text{[98]}), 101(^{st}), 103f, 113, 136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imāmīs, 2, 99–105, 106 (\text{imām}) (s) of guidance, 34, 40, 41, 51, 80(^{st}), 85, 90f., 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ja'far al-Ṣādiq, 108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jāḥili (\text{jāḥili}) death, 40f, 101</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judges, see qādis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justice, see 'adl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justinian II, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid al-Qasrī, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khālid rasūl Allāh, 11, 16, 19f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khārījītes, 12, 18, 41, 42, 57, 100(^{st}), 107f</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitāb Allāh wa-sunnat nabiyyīhi, the book of God and the sunna of His Prophet, 59–68, 73, 77, 83, 85, 89, 95, 137</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light, see nūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mahdī, 13, 52, 87f., 91, 92f., 98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Mahdī, mahdī, mahdiyyūn, 16, 36f., 40, 51, 75, 80(^{st}), 81, 102f, 113f</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mālik, 86f, 90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mamluk Egypt, Mamluks, 18, 97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ma‘mūn, 13, 16, 41, 92–6, 116f., 113–19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mansūr, 13, 84–7, 92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mansūr b. Jumhūr, 128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Marwān I, 7, 45, 48f, 130</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Marwān II, 10f, 28, 132</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Marwānīs, 11, 25f, 130</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medinese practice, 47f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miḥna, 94, 96, 97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mu‘āwiya, 41, 45, 130</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and the caliphal title, 6f., 20(^{st}) coins of, 24(^{st})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mujahid, [44], 56, 103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muḥammad, see the Prophet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muḥtaḏī, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mujaddid, 114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mukhtar, 60, 62, 67f., 103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muntasir, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muqtadī, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muqtāfī, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miṣāb b. Ṣa'id al-Kisrawī, 87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muṣ'ab b. al-Zubayr], 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mustakfī, 97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mustanṣir, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mustawrid b. 'Ullaфа, 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mustazhīr, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mu'taqīd, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mu'tamīd, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muṭarrif b. al-Mughīra, 28, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mu‘tasim, 14, 97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mutawakkil, 14, 16, 97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mu'tazz, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā‘ib Allāh, 5, 15(^{st}), 18, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Nāṣir, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naṣr b. Sayyār, 65f, 108, 117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nu‘aym b. Ḥammād, 98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numayrī, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūr, light, 35, 82, 100f., 104(^{st})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ottomans, 18, 97, 100(^{st})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Prophet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in early documents, 24–6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versus caliphs, 27–32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as imām al-ḥudā, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as mahdī, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prophets and caliphs, 27–32, 94f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qadarism, 117f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qādis, 44f., 46f, 70, 72f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qaṭārī b. al-Fujā‘a, 12(^{st}), 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quietism, 109</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qur‘ān, 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabī'at al-Ra'y, 91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rā‘ Allāh, God’s shepherd, 5, 9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rāshid/rashīd, Rāshīdūn, 36, 49, 51, 81(^{st}), 98, 102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ra‘y, 54, 56, 103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rescripts, 46, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rope, see ḥabl Allāh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saladin, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sālim b. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān, 117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samāl, 117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schacht, 48, 49f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seljuqs, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

al-Shafi'i, 90, 91, 93, 113
shūri, 32, 63, 65, 68, 76, 106, 108, 127
Siffin document, 69
Siffin, victors at, 69, 111, 112
signet rings, 24f.
Solomon, 31nn, 44, 56, 57, 81f., 91, 103, 115
Sufyānids, 7, 24f.
Sulaymān, 9, 130
sulṭān Allāh, 5, 113
Suwayd b. Sulaym, 60
al-Ṭā'ī', 14
the tawwābūn, 60
al-Ṭahṭāwī, 18
Thābit b. Sulaymān b. Sa'īd, 126
Thomson, 30
Tyan, 6, 44, 49
‘Ubaydallāh al-‘Anbarī, 93, 98, 103
‘ulamā', scholars, 57, 93, 98, 109f.
and the caliphal title, 19–23
and caliphal law, 48, 52
and the Prophet, 2, 58
‘Umar, 2, 130, 136
and the caliphal title, 20, 22
and ‘Umar II, 79, 114
and messianism, 113
‘Umar II, 2, 45, 91, 130
and the caliphal title, 9, 13, 22
and sunna, 62, 73–80
as redeemer, 114
Umayyads, 2, 44f., 81f.
and the caliphal title, 6–13, 20f.
hostile portrayal of, 23
and Jabrism, 117f.
of Spain, 17, 100f.
uswa ḥasana, 55
‘Uthmān, 2, 5, 21f., 60, 71, 130
and the caliphal title, 5, 6, 12, 20f.
and the origins of the caliphal office, 113
and Umayyad legitimism, 31–3
al-Walīd I, 8f., 29, 130
al-Walīd II, 10, 127, 132
letter of, 21, 26–8, 38f., 43, 57, 95f., 116–26, 134–18nn
al-Wāthiq, 14
Yazīd I, 7, 130
Yazīd II, 9, 45, 131
Yazīd III, 10, 63, 68, 107f., 132
letter of 28, 43, 126–8
Yazīd b. al-Muhallab, 12, 51, 61, 64–6, 107, 112
Zayd b. ‘Alī, 60, 103
Zayd b. Thābit, 48, 51, 71, 112
Zaydīs, 18, 100f.
This new study examines how religious authority was distributed in early Islam. It argues the case that, as in Shi'ism, it was concentrated in the head of state, rather than dispersed among learned laymen as in Sunnism. Originally the caliph was both head of state and ultimate source of religious law; the Sunni pattern represents the outcome of a conflict between the caliph and early scholars who, as spokesmen of the community, assumed religious leadership for themselves. Many Islamicists have assumed the Shi'ite concept of the imamate to be a deviant development. In contrast, Patricia Crone and Martin Hinds argue that it is an archaism preserving the concept of religious authority with which all Muslims began.

The cover illustration shows the reverse of a dirham dated 75AH/694-5 AD, in the caliphate of ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān, probably struck in Damascus. The standing figure is the Caliph himself, bearded and wearing Arab head-dress, with his right hand resting on his sword-hilt. The left-hand Kufic legend reads amīr al-mu‘minīn (Commander of the Faithful), the right-hand khalīfah Allāh (Caliph of God). Note also the star and crescent in each of the four segments. Photograph reproduced by permission of the State Historical Museum, Moscow.